MY19 ZB Commodore

Owner's Manual

GM Holden Ltd, ABN 84 006 893 232, Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (hereinafter Holden)

Change of name, address or ownership

If you drive a pre-owned Holden, have moved house or changed any of your details, we'd like to hear from you!

Holden uses your details to keep your vehicle's factory provided Roadside Assistance and Warranty details up to date.

It also helps us let you know if there is an existing rework action required on your vehicle. To update your details, please take a few minutes to fill in and mail the form at the back of the Service & Warranty Booklet or visit Holden's website at: www.holden.com.au/forms/change-of-owner-details

GM Holden Ltd (Holden) is collecting the new owner's personal information in order to process the request for transfer for the specified vehicle. We may disclose your personal information to our related companies and third parties who provide us with (or help us provide) products and services, including to overseas locations such as the USA, and other countries in Europe, Oceania and Asia.
Holden's privacy policy (available at: www.holden.com.au/privacypolicy) states how you can seek to access or correct any personal information Holden holds about you, how to complain about a privacy breach by Holden and how Holden will deal with a privacy complaint.
You can contact Holden on 1800 033 349 or alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at: holdencustomercare@gm.com

Note: Please refer to the inside front cover of the Service & Warranty Booklet for the Vehicle Identification Certificate.

© 2019 GM Holden Ltd.
© 2019 Holden New Zealand Ltd.
Reproduction in whole or part is prohibited without written approval from GM Holden Ltd., ABN 84 006 893 232 (Australia) or Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (New Zealand)

Printed in Australia
Part No. 92510108
February 2019
(MY19 ZB Commodore. Print 2)

Contents

Introduction 2
In Brief 5
Keys, Doors, and Windows 21
Seats and Restraints 49
Storage 80
Instruments and Controls 92
Lighting 132
Infotainment System 143
Climate Controls 196
Driving and Operating 204
Vehicle Care 281
Service and Maintenance 340
Technical Data 342
Customer Information 351
Index 355

Introduction

We thank you for choosing Holden and want to assure you of our continuing interest in your driving pleasure and satisfaction.

This owner's manual applies to the current ZB Commodore vehicle. Therefore, due to different models and options, you may find reference in this manual to some equipment not fitted to your own vehicle.

Please note that all information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest production information available at the time of printing.

Holden reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Introduction

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

Using this Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant.**
- The In Brief section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each chapter shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- For a complete list of the registered trademarks contained in this manual see *Trademarks and Licence Agreements* ⇨ *188* or *Trademarks and Licence Agreements* ⇨ *351*.

Danger, Warning, and Caution

⚠ Danger

Text marked ⚠ **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

⚠ Warning

Text marked ⚠ **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Symbols

Page references are indicated with ⇨.

This indicates 'see page'.

✍ NOTES

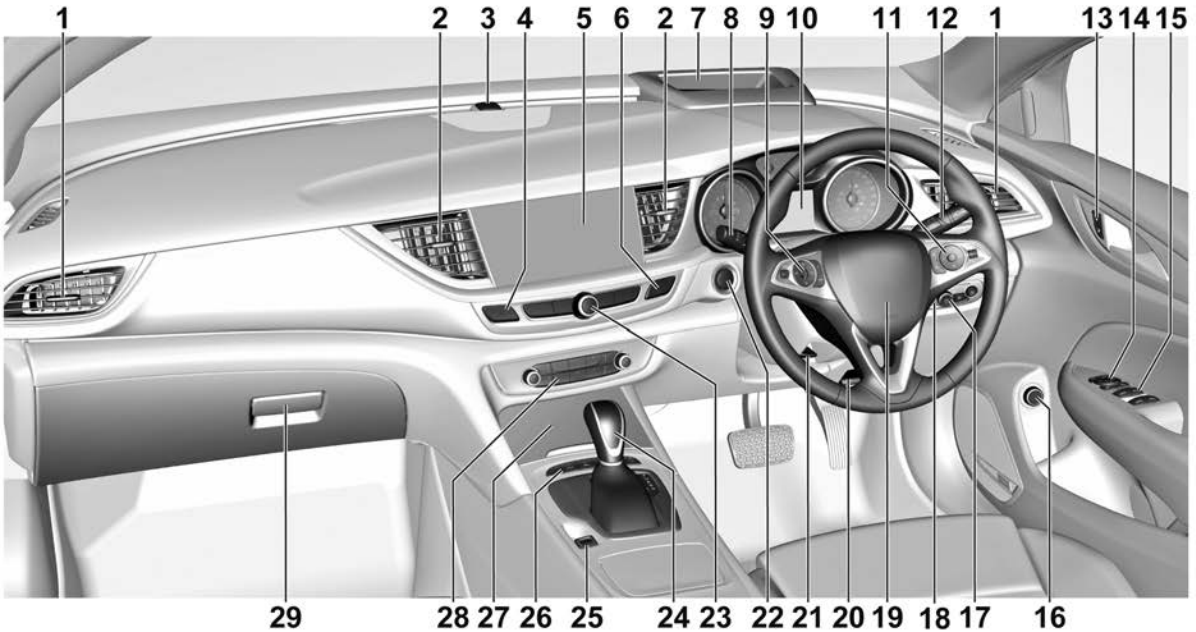
In Brief

Instrument Panel
Instrument Panel Overview 6

Initial Drive Information
Initial Drive Information 8
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 8
Remote Start 8
Seat Adjustment 9
Memory Features 12
Head Restraint Adjustment 12
Seat Belts 13
Mirror Adjustment 13
Steering Wheel Adjustment 14
Exterior Lighting 14
Horn 16
Washer and Wiper Systems . . . 16
Climate Controls 17
Transmission 18
Parking 18
Getting Started 19

Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel Overview



1. Side air vents. See *Adjustable Air Vents* ⇨ *202*.
2. Centre air vents. See *Adjustable Air Vents* ⇨ *202*.
3. Light sensor. See *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ *134*.
4. *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *138*.
5. Infotainment display. See *Overview* ⇨ *143*.
6. *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ *226*.

   Electronic Stability Control (ESC) ⇨ *227*.
7. LED projection alert. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *256*

   Head-Up Display (HUD) ⇨ *124*.
8. *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *94*.
9. *Cruise Control* ⇨ *245*.

   Speed Limiter ⇨ *247*.

   Adaptive Cruise Control ⇨ *249*.

   Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System ⇨ *256*.
10. *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *100*.

    Driver Information Centre (DIC) ⇨ *116*.
11. *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *93*.
12. Turn signal lever. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *138*.

    Low/high beam. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *132*.
13. Door locks. See *Door Locks* ⇨ *27*.
14. *Power Mirrors* ⇨ *41*.
15. *Power Windows* ⇨ *44*
16. Power tailgate switch. See *Tailgate* ⇨ *32*.
17. *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *132*.

    Front Fog Lamps ⇨ *138*.

    Headlamp Leveling Control ⇨ *137*.

    Instrument Panel Illumination Control ⇨ *139*.
18. Head-up display control. See *Head-Up Display (HUD)* ⇨ *124*.
19. *Horn* ⇨ *94*.
20. Bonnet release. See *Bonnet* ⇨ *284*.
21. *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *93*.
22. ENGINE START/STOP button. See *Power Button* ⇨ *206*.
23. Infotainment controls. See *Overview* ⇨ *143*.
24. Shift lever. See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *217*.

25. *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *224*.
26. Sport/VXR mode. See *Interactive Drive Control System* ⇨ *228*.

    Parking Assist ⇨ *237*.

    Advanced Parking Assist ⇨ *240*.

    Lane Keep Assist (LKA) ⇨ *268*.

    Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature ⇨ *209*.
27. *Storage Compartments* ⇨ *80*.
28. *Electronic Climate Control System* ⇨ *196*.
29. Glovebox. See *Storage Compartments* ⇨ *80*.

Initial Drive Information

This section provides a brief overview about some of the important features that may be fitted to your vehicle.

For more detailed information, refer to each of the features which can be found later in this owner's manual.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

Press to unlock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door. Open the doors by pulling the handles.

To open the tailgate, push the brand emblem (Liftback) or touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding (Sportwagon, Tourer) and open the tailgate.

Press to lock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ *22*, *Door Locks* ⇨ *27*, *Tailgate* ⇨ *32*.

Remote Start

Remote vehicle start allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

The remote vehicle start button is on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

Starting the Vehicle

To start the engine using the remote vehicle start feature:

1. Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release .
3. Immediately after completing step 2, press and hold for at least four seconds or until the hazard warning lights flash.

   The hazard warning lights flashing confirms the request to start the vehicle remotely has been received.

   The engine starts, the doors will remain locked and the climate control system may come on.

   The engine will continue to run for 15 minutes. The remote vehicle start can be extended.
4. To enter the vehicle, unlock the doors.
5. If the engine is running when you enter the vehicle: Press the brake pedal and press the ENGINE START/STOP button before moving the shift lever out of **P**.
6. If the engine is not running when you enter the vehicle: Start the engine normally. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *207*.

See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *26*.

Seat Adjustment

Manual Seats

Longitudinal Adjustment

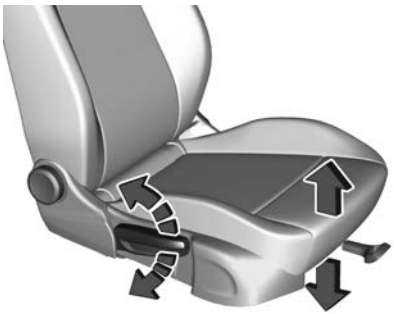
Lift the handle, slide the seat to the desired position then release the handle.

Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure the seat is locked in place.

Backrest Inclination

Turn the hand-wheel. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

Seat Height



Move the lever in a pumping motion:

up : seat higher

down : seat lower

Seat Inclination

Press the switch:

top : front end higher

bottom : front end lower

See *Seat Adjustment* ⇨ *52*.

Power Seats

Longitudinal Adjustment

Move the switch forward/backward.

Seat Height

Move the switch upward/downward.

Seat Inclination

Tilt the front of the switch upward/ downward.

Backrest Inclination

Tilt the switch forward/backward.

See *Seat Adjustment* ⇨ *52*.

Memory Features

If equipped, memory seats allow two drivers to save and recall their unique seat and exterior mirror positions for driving the vehicle.

Memory positions are linked to Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter 1 or 2 for automatic memory recalls.

Before saving, adjust all available memory feature positions. Turn the ignition on and then press MEM and 1 or 2 until a chime sounds.

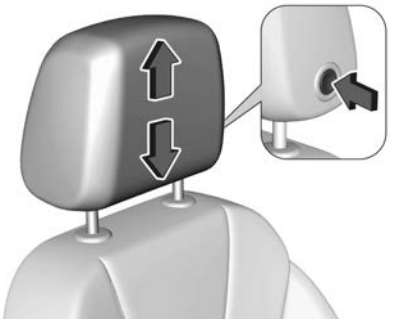
To manually recall these positions, press and hold 1, 2 until the saved position is reached.

When Seat Entry Memory is enabled in vehicle personalisation, positions previously saved to memory buttons 1 or 2 are automatically recalled when the ignition is switched on.

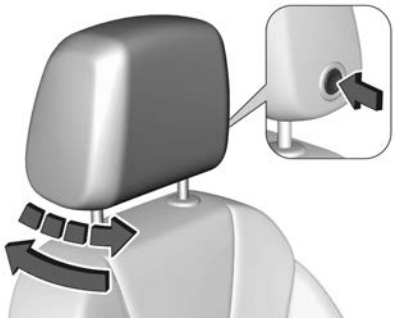
When Seat Exit Memory is enabled in vehicle personalisation, the seat automatically moves rearward when exiting the vehicle.

See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *57*.

Head Restraint Adjustment



Press the release button, adjust the height and engage.



If equipped, press the release button, pull the head restraint slowly forwards. It engages in several positions.

See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *49*.

Seat Belts

Pull the metal tongue across your body and clip it into the buckle.

The belt should not be twisted. It should lie flat and fit firmly across your hips and fit comfortably. Any extra belt length retracts automatically.

To unfasten, press the red button on the belt buckle.

See *How to Wear Seat Belts Properly* ⇨ *65*.

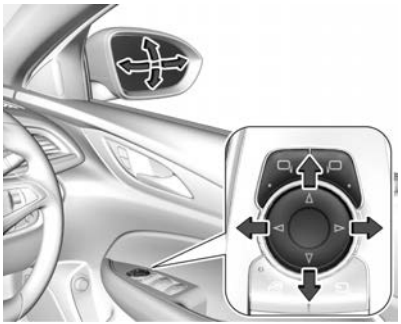
Mirror Adjustment

Interior Mirror

To adjust the mirror, move the mirror housing in the desired direction.

See *Manual Rearview Mirror* ⇨ *43*, *Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror* ⇨ *43*.

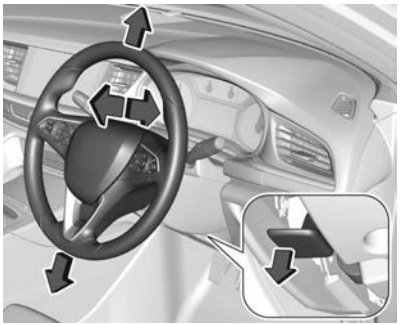
Exterior Mirrors



Select the relevant exterior mirror by pushing for the left or right mirror. Press the control to adjust the selected mirror in the desired direction.

See *Power Mirrors* ⇨ *41*.

Steering Wheel Adjustment



Unlock the lever below the steering column. Adjust the steering wheel and then engage the lever. Ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust the steering wheel unless the vehicle is stationary and the steering wheel lock has been released.

See *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *93*.

Exterior Lighting

Light Control Switch

Turn the light control switch:

AUTO : Automatic light control, switches automatically between daytime running lights and headlights

: Park, tail and rear number plate lamps

: Headlamps and all park lamps

See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *132*.

High and Low Beam, Headlamp Flash

Push the turn signal lever to change from low to high beam.

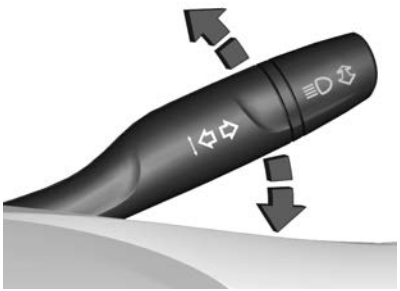
Pull the lever to deactivate high beam.

High beam is indicated by ≣● on the instrument cluster.

To activate the headlamp flash, pull the turn signal lever and release. The headlamps will remain on for as long as the lever is pulled.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ *133*.

Turn Signals

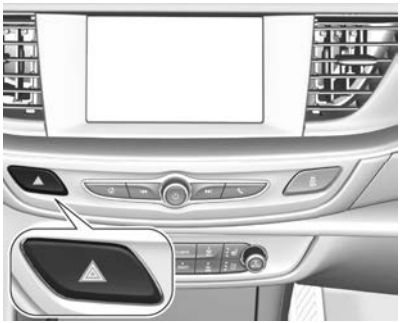


Lever up : Left turn signal

Lever down : Right turn signal

See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *138*.

Hazard Warning Flashers



Operated by pressing ⚠.

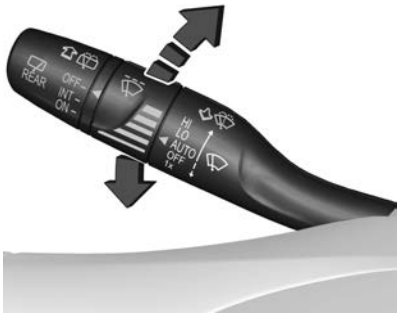
See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *138*.

Horn

Press .

Washer and Wiper Systems

Windscreen Wiper



HI : fast

LO : slow

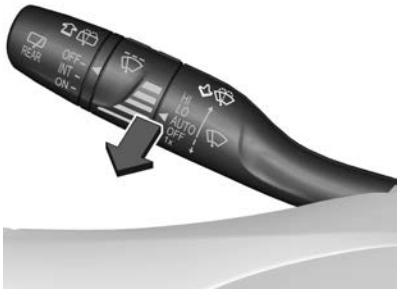
AUTO : automatic wiping with rain sensor

OFF : off

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever downwards to position **1x**.

See *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *94*.

Windscreen Washer



Pull the lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper operates a few times.

See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *297*.

Rear Window Wiper (Sportwagon, Tourer)

Turn the outer cap to activate the rear window wiper:

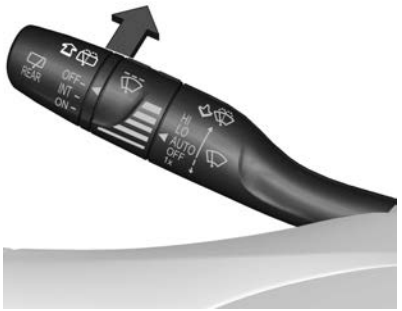
OFF : off

INT : intermittent operation

ON : continuous operation

See *Rear Window Wiper/Washer (Sportwagon, Tourer)* ⇨ *96*

Rear Window Washer (Sportwagon, Tourer)



Push the lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper operates a few times.

See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *297*.

Climate Controls

Controls

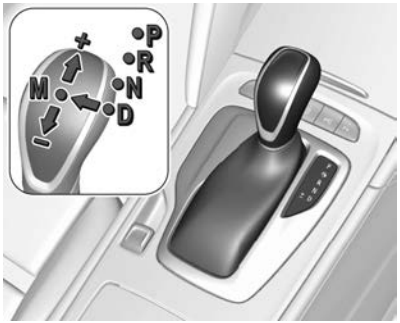
Depending on vehicle model, the following features may be available:

- Control dial for driver temperature adjustment.
- Control dial for front passenger temperature adjustment.
- **CLIMATE** : Enters the Climate Setting menu in the infotainment display.
- ⌃ or ⌄ : Fan speed increase or decrease.

- **ON/OFF** : Turns the climate control system on or off.
- **AUTO** : Automatic mode.
- : Manual air recirculation.
- MAX : Windscreen demisting and defrosting.
- REAR : Heated rear window and exterior mirrors.
- : Heated seats.
- : Ventilated seats.

See *Electronic Climate Control System* ⇨ *196*, *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ *46*, *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *59*, *Heated Rear Seats* ⇨ *64*, *Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *59*.

Transmission



P : Park position

R : Reverse gear

N : Neutral

D : Automatic mode

M : Manual mode

+ : Upshift in manual mode

– : Downshift in manual mode

The shift lever is locked in **P** and can only be moved when the ignition is on, the release button on the shift lever is pushed and the brake pedal is applied.

See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *217*.

Parking

1. Apply the electric park brake. Check the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.
2. Select **P** (Park).
3. Close all windows.
4. Turn the ignition off, remove the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter and exit the vehicle.

Note

For vehicles with a turbocharger: After running at high engine speed or with high engine loads, allow the engine to idle in **P** or **N** for approx. 30 seconds before turning off. This will help protect the turbocharger.

5. Press the button on the RKE transmitter, or press the lock/unlock button on a door handle (with the RKE transmitter within 1 m of the door handle) to lock all doors.

Note

The engine fan may keep running for several minutes after the ignition has been turned off. This is normal.

⚠ Warning

Be careful where you park or drive. As with any vehicle, do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where combustible materials such as dry grass or leaves can come in contact with a hot exhaust system.

Exhaust gases are hazardous, especially if they concentrate in closed rooms.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed space such as a closed garage or underground car park.

Getting Started

Before Driving Off

1. Close and secure all doors.
2. Position the seat for comfortable driving.

See *Seat Position* ⇨ *51*.

3. Adjust the rear view mirrors.

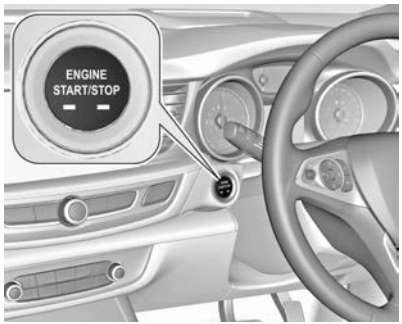
See *Power Mirrors* ⇨ *41*.

4. Fasten the seat belts.

See *Three-Point Seat Belt* ⇨ *66*.

5. Check the instrument cluster indicators illuminate when turning the ignition on and go off once the engine is started. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *100*.

Starting the Engine



Press the brake pedal and move the shift lever to **P** (Park) or **N** (Neutral).

Do not operate the accelerator pedal.

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button briefly: an automatic starter control procedure operates with a short delay until the engine is running.

To turn the engine off when vehicle is stationary, press the ENGINE START/STOP button briefly. Apply the parking brake and engage **P**.

See *Power Button* ⇨ *206*, *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *207*.

Stop-start System

The stop-start system helps to save fuel and reduce the exhaust emissions.

When conditions allow, it performs an Autostop and turns off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light. The ignition remains on.

An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the AUTOSTOP position in the tachometer. After restarting, the engine speed is indicated.

See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *209*.

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks
Keys 21
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 22
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 22
Remote Vehicle Start 26
Door Locks 27
Safety Locks 31

Doors
Tailgate 32

Vehicle Security
Immobiliser 40

Exterior Mirrors
Convex Mirrors 41
Power Mirrors 41
Folding Mirrors 41
Heated Mirrors 42
Automatic Dimming Mirror 42
Reverse Tilt Mirrors 42

Interior Mirrors
Manual Rearview Mirror 43
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror 43

Windows
Windows 43
Power Windows 44
Heated Rear Window 46
Sun Visors 46

Roof
Sunroof 46

Keys and Locks

Keys

Handle the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Note

Do not put the RKE transmitter in the load compartment.

Replacement Transmitters

Two RKE transmitters are supplied with the vehicle.

The key number is specified on a detachable tag. The key number must be quoted when ordering a replacement transmitter as it is a component of the immobiliser system.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ *22*, *Door Locks* ⇨ *27*, *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *207*.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System has a range of up to 100 metres, but may also be much less due to external influences. The hazard warning flashers confirm operation. Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Do not make changes or modifications to the RKE system.

Window tinting may reduce the operating range of the RKE transmitter.

If there is a decrease in the operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer for service.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

Lock: Press to lock all doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door.

If the driver's door is not closed, the central locking system will not operate. A horn chirp will sound to alert you.

Unlock: Two unlocking modes are available:

- All doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door will be unlocked by pressing once.
- Only the driver's door and fuel filler door will be unlocked by pressing once. To unlock all remaining doors and the tailgate, press once more.

Additionally if equipped, pressing and holding or :

- for one second folds the exterior mirrors in or out. See *Folding Mirrors* ⇨ *41*.
- for more than two seconds closes or opens the power windows, and closes the sunroof if equipped. See *Power Windows* ⇨ *44* or *Sunroof* ⇨ *46*.

Some of these settings can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

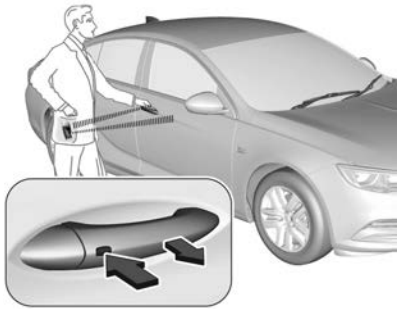
Remote vehicle start: Press to start the engine from outside the vehicle. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *26*.

Power tailgate: Press twice to open or close the power tailgate. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate, must be pressed slightly longer than for door locking and unlocking.

Confirmation

Operation of the central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning lights flashing. This setting must first be activated in the Settings menu in the infotainment system. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Keyless Entry Operation



The RKE transmitter must be outside the vehicle and within a radius of approx. one metre from the door in question or the tailgate.

Unlocking

Press the button on the exterior door handle and pull the handle.

Two unlocking modes are available:

- All doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door will be unlocked by pressing the button on the exterior handle once.
- Only the driver's door and fuel filler door are unlocked by pressing the button on the driver's door exterior handle once. To unlock all remaining doors and the tailgate, press the button once more.

This setting can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Locking

Press the button on any exterior door handle. All doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door will be locked.

The system locks if any of the following occurs:

- It has been more than five seconds since unlocking.
- The button on an exterior handle has been pressed twice within five seconds to unlock the vehicle.
- Any door has been opened and all doors are now closed.

If the driver's door is not closed properly, the RKE transmitter remains in the vehicle or the ignition is not off, locking will not be permitted.

If there have been two or more RKE transmitters in the vehicle and the ignition was on once, the doors will be locked even if just one transmitter is taken out of the vehicle.

Unlocking and Opening the Tailgate

The tailgate can be unlocked and opened by pushing the brand emblem (Liftback) or the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding (Sportwagon, Tourer) when the RKE transmitter is in range.

For vehicles with a power tailgate, it can also be opened hands-free by moving your foot below the rear bumper. If the doors have not been unlocked, they will remain locked. See *Tailgate* ⇨ *32*.

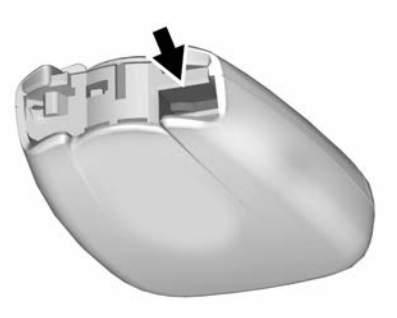
Battery Replacement

Replace the battery as soon as the system no longer operates properly or the range is reduced. The need for battery replacement is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

To replace:

1. Press the button on the side of the RKE transmitter and remove the mechanical key from the housing.



2. Insert the key blade again approx. 6 mm and turn the key to open the housing. Take care, as inserting the key blade further than this can damage the housing.

3. Remove and replace the battery. Use a CR2032 or equivalent battery. Pay attention to the installation position.
4. Close the housing and insert the key blade.

Fault

If the central locking cannot be operated or the engine cannot be started, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in RKE transmitter.
- RKE transmitter is out of reception range.

- The battery voltage is too low.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals. The power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

To rectify the cause of the fault, change the position of the RKE transmitter or use the mechanical key to unlock the doors, see *Door Locks* ⇨ *27*.

Memorised Settings

Whenever the ignition is switched off, the following settings are automatically memorised by the RKE transmitter:

- Automatic climate control.
- Lighting.
- Infotainment system.
- Door locking system.
- Sport mode settings.
- Comfort settings.

This is set for each RKE transmitter. The saved settings are automatically used the next time the ignition is turned on with the applicable memorised transmitter.

A precondition is that Personalisation by Driver is activated in the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

The status change is available only after locking and unlocking the vehicle.

For vehicles with memory power seats, the assigned memory position of the power seat is automatically recalled when switching the ignition on and Auto Memory Recall is activated in the infotainment system for the memorised RKE transmitter.
See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *57* or *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Remote Vehicle Start

Remote vehicle start allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

The remote vehicle start button is on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start and if the vehicle has heated seats, they may come on during a remote start.
See *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *59* and *Heated Rear Seats* ⇨ *64*.

Starting the Vehicle

To start the engine using the remote vehicle start feature:

1. Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release .
3. Immediately after completing step 2, press and hold for at least four seconds or until the hazard warning lights flash.

   The hazard warning lights flashing confirms the request to start the vehicle remotely has been received.

The engine starts, the doors will remain locked and the climate control system may come on.

The engine will continue to run for 15 minutes. The remote vehicle start can be extended, see “Extending Engine Run Time” below.

4. To enter the vehicle, unlock the doors.
5. If the engine is running when you enter the vehicle: Press the brake pedal and press the ENGINE START/STOP button before moving the shift lever out of P.

   If the engine is not running when you enter the vehicle: Start the engine normally. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *207*.

Extending Engine Run Time

To extend the remote vehicle start run-time to 30 minutes, repeat steps 1-3 while the engine is still running. The remote start can be extended once.

For example, if the engine has been running for five minutes and the remote vehicle start is extended, the engine will run for a total of 30 minutes (15 plus 15).

A maximum of two remote vehicle starts, or a single start with an extension, is allowed between ignition cycles.

The ignition must be turned on and then back off before the remote vehicle start procedure can be used again.

Cancelling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote vehicle start, do one of the following:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press and hold .
- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Turn the ignition on and then off.

Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Operate

The remote vehicle start feature will not operate if:

- The RKE transmitter is in the vehicle.
- The vehicle is unlocked.
- The bonnet is not closed.
- The hazard warning lights are on.
- The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) in the instrument cluster is on.

Door Locks

⚠ Danger

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

will not open it. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear seat belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.

- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.
- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop the vehicle. Locking the doors can help prevent this from happening.

There are several ways to lock and unlock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door.

From the outside:

- Press or on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.
- Press the lock/unlock button on an outside door handle when the RKE transmitter is within one metre of the door.
- Press the brand emblem (Liftback) or the touchpad under the tailgate moulding (Sportwagon, Tourer) when the RKE transmitter is within one metre of the tailgate. If the doors are locked, this will only unlock and open the tailgate.
- Using the mechanical key in the driver's door lock.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ *22*, *Tailgate* ⇨ *32* or “Operation with the Mechanical Key” below.

From the inside:

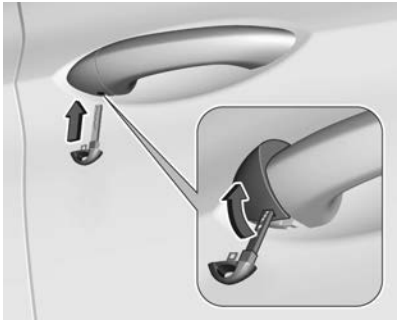
- Operate the central locking buttons:
  - Press to lock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door.
  - Press to unlock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door.
- Pull the interior handle twice.

Operation with the Mechanical Key

In case of a fault, such as the vehicle battery or RKE transmitter battery being flat, the driver's door can be locked or unlocked with the mechanical key.

Push the button on the side of the RKE transmitter and remove the mechanical key.

The lock cylinder in the driver's door is covered by a cap.



Insert the mechanical key blade into the recess at the bottom of the cap and swivel the key upward.

Manual Unlocking

Manually unlock the driver's door by inserting the mechanical key into the lock cylinder and turning anti-clockwise.

If there is vehicle power, all other doors, the tailgate and the fuel filler door can be unlocked by pressing in the driver's door central locking buttons.

Alternatively, the other doors can be opened individually by pulling the interior handle twice. If there is no vehicle power, the tailgate and fuel filler door cannot be unlocked.

Manual Locking

If there is vehicle power:

- Close all doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door, and lock the vehicle from outside by turning the key in the lock cylinder clockwise.
- Alternatively, close the tailgate, fuel filler door and all doors except the driver's door, and press in the driver's door central locking buttons. Then close the driver's door and lock it from the outside by turning the key in the lock cylinder clockwise.

If there is no vehicle power, push the inside locking knob of each door except the driver's door. Then close the driver's door and lock it from the outside by turning the key in the lock cylinder clockwise.

Important: If there is no vehicle power, the fuel filler door and tailgate cannot be locked if they were unlocked.

After locking, replace the lock cylinder cap: Insert the cap with the lower side in the recesses, swivel and push the cap until it engages at the upper side.

Automatic Locking

This security feature can be configured to automatically lock all doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door when the shift lever is moved out of P (Park).

When the shift lever is moved into P (Park), the vehicle will be unlocked automatically.

Activation or deactivation of automatic locking can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Automatic Relock After Unlocking

This feature can be configured to automatically lock all doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door a short time after unlocking with the RKE transmitter, provided no door has been opened.

Activation or deactivation of automatic locking can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Passive Locking

This feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if a RKE transmitter has been recognised previously inside the vehicle, all doors have then been closed and the RKE transmitter does not remain within the vehicle.

If the RKE transmitter is in the vehicle or if the ignition is not off, passive locking will not be permitted.

If there have been two or more RKE transmitters in the vehicle and the ignition was on once, the feature locks the vehicle if just one RKE transmitter is taken out of the vehicle.

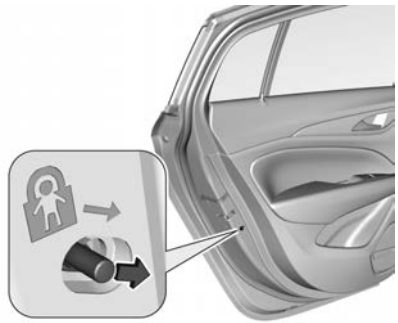
To prevent passive locking of the vehicle, e.g. when refuelling or if passengers remain in the vehicle, the system must be disabled.

To disable the system, press the driver's door central locking button for a few seconds while one door is open. An acoustic signal sounds three times to confirm deactivation. The function remains disabled until the central locking button is pressed or the ignition is switched on.

Activation or deactivation of passive locking can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*. The setting can be saved for each RKE transmitter being used.

Safety Locks

Child Safety Locks



Child safety locks help prevent the rear doors being accidentally opened by small children in the vehicle.

Open the rear door and move the pin to the front position. The door cannot be opened from inside.

To deactivate, move the pin to the rear position.

⚠ Warning

For safety, always check the lock is operating correctly (after setting) by trying to open the door from inside the vehicle.

Doors

Tailgate

Opening

Liftback

Push the brand emblem and open the tailgate:

- After unlocking the doors, or
- With the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter within approx. one metre of the tailgate.

Sportwagon, Tourer

Push the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding and open the tailgate manually:

- After unlocking the doors, or
- With the RKE transmitter within approx. one metre of the tailgate.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ 22.

⚠ Warning

To prevent dangerous exhaust fumes entering the vehicle, close the tailgate when the engine is running. If it is necessary to leave the tailgate open (while carrying bulky cargo) close all windows, switch heater controls to 'fresh' and set fan to highest speed.

Closing

Use the interior handle to close the tailgate until it drops under its own weight.

⚠ Warning

To avoid injury and/or damage to the vehicle, before closing the tailgate check the contact area is unobstructed.

Power Tailgate

⚠ Warning

Do not touch any vehicle parts below the vehicle during hands-free operation. There is a risk of injury from hot engine parts.

The power tailgate can be operated by:

- Pressing x2 twice on the RKE transmitter. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate, x2 must be pressed longer than during door locking or unlocking.
- The touchpad switch under the exterior tailgate moulding and on the inside of the open tailgate.
- The operation mode switch on the inside of the driver's door.
- Hands-free operation with motion sensor below the rear bumper.

The tailgate can only be operated when the vehicle is stationary, with shift lever in P and with the operation mode switch not in the OFF position. The hazard warning lights flash and a chime sounds while the power tailgate is operating.

Note

Operating the power tailgate does not operate the central locking system. To open the tailgate with the button on the RKE transmitter, or with the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding, or via hands-free operation, it is not necessary to unlock the vehicle.

The RKE transmitter must be outside the vehicle, within approx. one metre of the tailgate.

Do not leave the RKE transmitter in the load compartment.

Lock the vehicle after closing if it was unlocked previously.

Operation with the RKE Transmitter

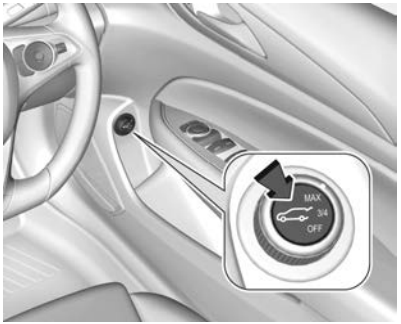
Press twice to open or close the tailgate. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate, must be pressed longer than during door locking or unlocking.

Operation with the Touchpad Switch

Press the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding until the tailgate starts to move. If the vehicle is locked, the RKE transmitter must be outside the vehicle, within approx. one metre of the tailgate.

To close, press on the inside of the open tailgate until the tailgate starts to move.

Operation with the Driver's Door Switch



Press on the operation mode switch inside the driver's door until the tailgate starts to open or close.

Hands-free Operation

To open or close the tailgate with the hands-free feature, move your foot back and forth below the rear bumper in the area where the image is projected on the ground.

Note

If the vehicle is fitted with a towbar, the image position will be towards the left.

Do not move your foot from side to side, hold your foot still or move too slowly below the bumper.

The RKE transmitter must be outside the vehicle within approx. one metre of the tailgate.

When foot motion is being detected by the sensor, the system actuates the tailgate after a short delay.

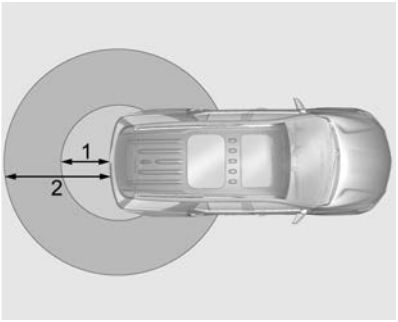
⚠ Warning

Do not touch any vehicle parts below the vehicle during hands-free operation. There is a risk of injury from hot engine parts.

Settings for the hands-free operation can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Projected Image

An image will be projected for one minute onto the ground near the rear bumper when an RKE transmitter is detected within approximately two metres of the rear of the vehicle.



1. One Metre Hands-Free Operation Detection Zone
2. Two Metre Projected Image Detection Zone

The projected image shows where the foot motion is to take place. The projected image will only be available for this RKE transmitter after it has been out of range for at least 20 seconds. If an RKE transmitter is again detected within approximately two metres of the tailgate, or another hands-free operation has been detected, the one-minute timer will be reset.

The projected image will not work under these conditions:

- The vehicle battery voltage is low.
- The transmission is not in P (Park).
- Hands-free tailgate control is set to OFF in vehicle personalisation.
- The power tailgate operation mode switch is turned off.
- The vehicle remains parked for 72 hours or more, with no RKE transmitter use or keyless entry operation. To re-enable, press any button on the RKE transmitter or open and close a door.

The projected image will not operate for a single RKE transmitter when a transmitter:

- Has been left within approximately 5 metres of the tailgate for several minutes.
- Has been left inside the vehicle and all doors are closed.
- Has approached the area outside the tailgate five times within 10 minutes.

Hands-free Tailgate and Projected Image Availability

Action	Hands-free Tailgate	Projected Image
RKE transmitter within detection zone.	Operative	On for 1 minute
RKE transmitter left inside detection zone for minimum 10 minutes.	Operative	On for 1 minute. Off until RKE button press or a door is opened and closed
RKE transmitter brought in and out of detection zone 5 times within 10 minutes.	Operative	On for 1 minute. Off for 1 hour or until RKE button press or door is opened and closed
Vehicle remains parked for more than 72 hours.	Operative	Off
Vehicle battery is low.	Non-operative	Off
Transmission is not in P (Park).	Non-operative	Off
Power tailgate is turned off.	Non-operative	Off
Hands-free tailgate is disabled.	Non-operative	Off

Stop or Change Direction of Movement

To stop movement of the tailgate immediately:

- press x2 once on the RKE transmitter, or
- press the touchpad switch under the exterior tailgate moulding, or
- press on the inside of the open tailgate, or
- press on the operation mode switch inside the driver's door.

Pressing one of the switches again will reverse the direction of movement.

Operation Modes

The power tailgate has three modes of operation, which are controlled by the operation mode switch on the inside of the driver's door.

To change the mode, turn the switch:

- Normal mode MAX: The power tailgate opens to full height.
- Intermediate mode 3/4: The power tailgate opens to a reduced height that can be adjusted.
- Off: The tailgate can only be operated manually.

Adjusting Reduced Opening Height in Intermediate Mode

The height the tailgate automatically stops at can be adjusted to allow for low overhead objects such as a garage door, etc.

1. Turn the operation mode switch inside the driver's door to 3/4.
2. Open the power tailgate using any operation switch.
3. Stop the movement at the desired height by pressing any operation switch.

   If required, manually move the stopped tailgate to the desired position.

4. Press and hold the button on the inside of the open tailgate for three seconds.

   A chime sound indicates the new setting has been recorded and the hazard warning lights will flash.

Note

- Adjusting opening height should be programmed at ground level.
- The reduced height can only set at an opening angle of above 30°.

When the operation mode switch is set to intermediate mode 3/4, the power tailgate will stop opening at the newly set position.

The tailgate can only be held open if a minimum height is exceeded (minimum opening angle from 30°). The opening height cannot be programmed below that height.

Safety Function

If the power tailgate encounters an obstacle during opening or closing, the direction of movement will automatically be reversed slightly.

Multiple obstacles in one power cycle will deactivate tailgate operation. In this case, close or open the tailgate manually.

The power tailgate has pinch sensors on each side edge. If the sensors detect obstacles between the tailgate and body, the tailgate will open, until it is activated again or closed manually. The safety function is indicated by a warning chime.

Remove all obstacles before resuming normal power operation.

If the vehicle is equipped with a genuine Holden towbar and a trailer is electrically connected, the power tailgate can only be opened with the touchpad switch or closed with in the open tailgate.

Ensure there are no obstacles in the movement area.

Overload

If the power tailgate is repeatedly operated at short intervals, the power operation function may be temporarily disabled. Move tailgate manually into its end position to reset the system.

General Hints for Tailgate Operation

⚠ Warning

To prevent dangerous exhaust fumes entering the vehicle, close the tailgate when the engine is

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

running. If it is necessary to leave the tailgate open (while carrying bulky cargo) close all windows, switch heater controls to 'fresh' and set fan to highest speed.

Caution

Before opening the tailgate, check for overhead obstructions such as a garage door, etc., to avoid damage to the tailgate.

Always check the movement area above and behind the tailgate.

Note

- The installation of certain heavy accessories onto the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.

- The operation of the power tailgate is disabled under low vehicle battery conditions. In this case, the tailgate may not even be manually operable.
- With the power tailgate disabled and all doors unlocked, the tailgate can only be operated manually. In this event, manually closing the tailgate requires significant force.
- At low outside temperatures, the tailgate may not open fully by itself. In this event, lift the tailgate manually to its normal end position.

Vehicle Security

Immobiliser

The immobiliser is activated automatically once the ignition is turned off.

If the instrument cluster control indicator flashes when the ignition is on, there is a fault in the system and the engine cannot be started.

Switch off the ignition and repeat the start attempt. If required, retry with the RKE transmitter placed in the centre console transmitter pocket. See *Power Button* ⇨ *206*.

If the control indicator continues flashing, attempt to start the engine using another RKE transmitter.

Seek the assistance of your dealer.

Note

- Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) tags such as security passes, etc. may cause interference with the RKE transmitter. Do not have them placed near the transmitter when starting the vehicle.
- The immobiliser does not lock the doors. You should always lock the vehicle after leaving it.

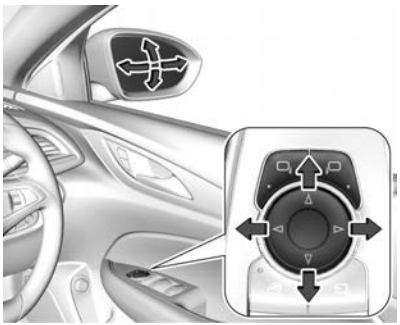
Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors

The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

Symbols for the side blind zone alert are displayed in the mirrors. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* ⇨ *265*.

Power Mirrors



Select the relevant exterior mirror by pushing ▭◂ for the left mirror or ▸▭ for the right mirror. An LED in the button indicates the selection.

Press the control to adjust the selected mirror in the desired direction.

Folding Mirrors

For safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force.

Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

Electric Folding

The vehicle may have electric folding mirrors.

Push ▭◂. Both exterior mirrors will fold.

Push ▭◂ again to return both exterior mirrors to their original position.

If an electrically folded mirror is manually folded, pushing ▭◂ will only electrically fold the other mirror.

Folding Mirrors with RKE Transmitter

If equipped, press again after locking the doors for one second to fold in the mirrors. Press again after unlocking for one second to fold out mirrors.

This function can be activated or deactivated, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*. The settings are automatically stored for the RKE transmitter being used, see *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *22*.

Heated Mirrors

Operated together with heated rear window by pressing REAR. An LED in the button illuminates.

Heating will operate with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

Automatic Dimming Mirror

The vehicle may have an automatic dimming mirror. Glare from following vehicles at night is reduced by automatically dimming the exterior mirror on the driver's side.

Reverse Tilt Mirrors

For vehicles with memory seat function, the exterior mirrors are automatically tilted down toward the rear tyres when reverse gear is selected as a parking aid. This function may be disabled if a trailer is attached.

See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *57*.

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror

To reduce glare from following vehicles at night, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

Note

The rear view clarity is reduced when the mirror is set to the anti-glare position.

Return the mirror back to its original position as soon as there is no longer any glare.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

The vehicle may have an automatic dimming rear view mirror. Glare from following vehicles at night is automatically reduced.

Windows

For vehicles with an automatic dimming interior mirror, do not attach stickers or similar to the windscreen in the area of the interior mirror. Otherwise the detection zone of the sensor and the view area of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted.

Windscreen Replacement

Caution
If the vehicle has a front-looking camera sensor for the driver assistance systems, it is very important that any windscreen replacement is performed accurately. Otherwise, these systems may not operate correctly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour/or messages from these systems.

Caution

If the vehicle is equipped with a Head-up display, it is very important that any windscreen replacement is performed accurately. Otherwise, the system may not operate correctly and the image may look out of focus.

Power Windows

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seat, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

The power windows can be operated when the ignition is on, or in retained accessory power mode. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *208*.

The vehicle has express up/down power windows for all doors. Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Pushing or pulling gently to the first detent: The window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated.

Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent then releasing: The window moves up or down automatically with the safety function enabled.

To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

Safety Function

If the window glass encounters resistance during automatic closing above approx. half way, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Override

In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, turn the ignition on, then pull the switch to the first detent and hold. The window moves up without the safety function enabled while the switch is being operated.

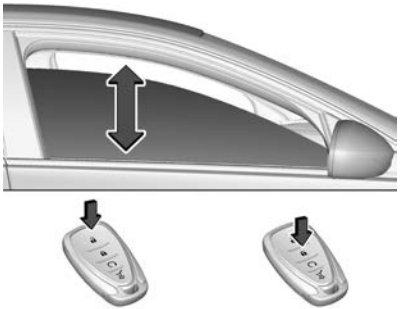
To stop movement, release the switch.

Child Safety System for Rear Windows

Press to deactivate the rear door power windows; the LED illuminates. To activate, press again.

Operating Windows from Outside

If equipped, the windows can be operated remotely from outside the vehicle.



Press and hold for more than two seconds to open the windows.

Press and hold for more than two seconds to close the windows. Release the button to stop window movement. If the windows are fully opened or closed, the hazard warning lights will flash twice.

This function can be activated or deactivated, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, window operation may be disabled for some time.

Initialising the Power Windows

If the windows cannot be closed automatically, such as after disconnecting the vehicle battery, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Activate the window electronics as follows:

1. Close the doors.
2. Turn the ignition on.
3. Push the switch until the window is completely open and keep pushing for additional two seconds.
4. Pull a power window switch until the window is closed and keep pulling for additional two seconds.
5. Repeat for each window.

Heated Rear Window

Operated together with heated exterior mirrors by pressing REAR. An LED in the button illuminates.

Heating will operate with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

Sun Visors

The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent glare.

To view the vanity mirror, lift the cover from the lower edge. Lamps illuminate when the cover is opened. The mirror covers should be closed when driving.

A ticket holder is located on the backside of the sun visor.

Roof

Sunroof

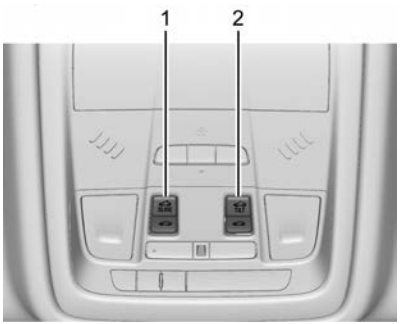
⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the sunroof. There is a risk of injury, particularly to children.

Keep a close watch on the moving parts when operating the sunroof. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

The sunroof can be operated when the ignition is on, or in retained accessory power mode. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *208*.

Liftback



Open or Close

Press SLIDE or (1) gently to the first detent: The sunroof is opened or closed as long as the switch is operated.

Press SLIDE or firmly to the second detent then release: The sunroof is opened or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more.

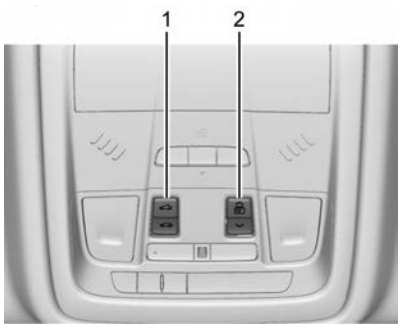
Raise or Close

Press TILT or (2) : The sunroof is raised or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled.

Sunblind

The sunblind can be manually operated. Close or open the sunblind by sliding. When the sunroof is open, the sunblind is always open.

Sportwagon, Tourer



Open or Close

Press or (1) gently to the first detent: The sunroof is opened or closed as long as the switch is operated.

Press or firmly to the second detent then release: The sunroof is opened or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more.

Power Sunshade

Press ∧ (2) to open the power sunshade. Press ∨ to close the power sunshade.

General Hints

Safety Function

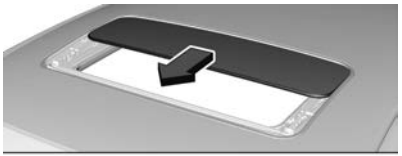
If the sunroof encounters resistance during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Safety Function Override

In the event of closing difficulties, e.g. due to frost, hold the switch pressed to the second detent. The sunroof closes with safety function disabled while the switch is held. To stop movement, release the switch.

Closing the Sunroof from Outside

The sunroof can be closed remotely from outside the vehicle.



Press and hold for more than two seconds to close the sunroof.

This function is linked to the Remote Window Operation setting in the infotainment system Settings menu, and can be activated or deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Initialising the Sunroof

After a power failure, it may only be possible to operate the sunroof to a limited extent. Have the system initialised by your dealer.

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints
Head Restraints 49

Front Seats
Seat Position 51
Seat Adjustment 52
Memory Seats 57
Front Seat Armrest 58
Ventilated Front Seats 59
Heated Front Seats 59
Massage 60

Rear Seats
Rear Seats 61
Rear Seat Armrest 64
Heated Rear Seats 64

Seat Belts
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 65
Three-Point Seat Belt 66
Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy 67
Seat Belt Care 67
Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash 68

Airbag System
Airbag System 68
Front Airbag System 69
Side Airbag System 70
Curtain Airbag System 71
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 72
Notices for Customer Installed Equipment 72
Airbag System Check 72
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash 72

Child Restraints
Older Children 73
Infants and Young Children 73
Child Restraint Systems 74
Where to Put the Restraint 76
Top Tether Anchor Fittings 77
Child Restraint Installation Locations 77
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 77

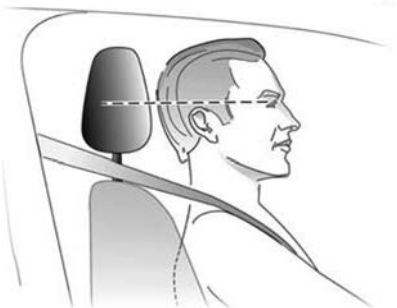
Pedestrian Protection System
Pedestrian Protection System 78

Head Restraints

⚠ Warning

The head restraint is a safety feature.

The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.

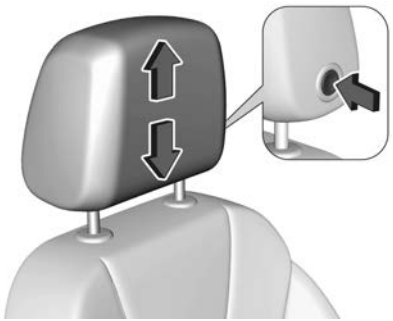


Adjustment

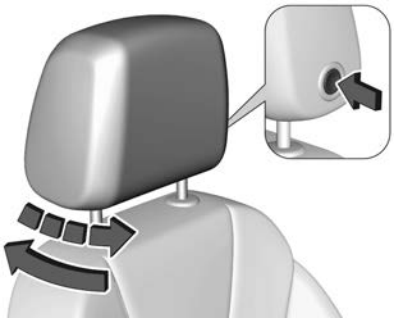
Front Seats

Note

The front head restraints on VXR models are not adjustable.

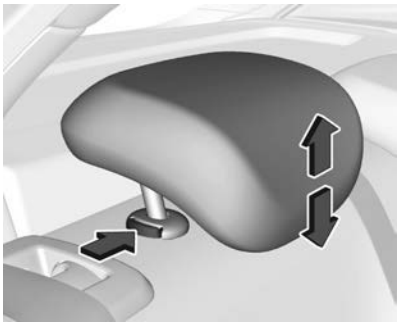


Press the release button, adjust the height and engage.



If equipped, press the release button, pull the head restraint forwards slowly. It engages in several positions.

Rear Seat



Pull the head restraint upwards, or press the catch to release and push the head restraint downwards.

Removal

⚠ Warning

With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not

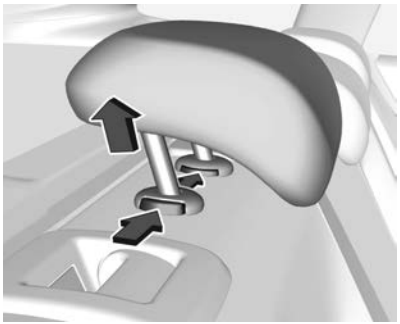
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

Rear Seat

Removal of rear head restraints for load compartment extension, etc.



Press both catches, pull the head restraint upwards and remove.

Note

The rear seat back may need to be partially folded to provide clearance.

See *Rear Seats* ⇨ *61*.

Front Seats

Seat Position

⚠ Warning

To avoid reducing the effectiveness of seat belts, seatbacks should only be upright or at most semi-reclined when the vehicle is moving.

⚠ Warning

Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

⚠ Warning

Do not fit unauthorised seat covers. Unauthorised seat covers may impair the operation of the side impact airbags (SIAB).

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Always sit centrally in the seat.

Do not place any object between the seat and the door or the seat and the centre console. See *Airbag System* ⇨ *68*.

- Sit with the buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so the legs are slightly angled when fully pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Set the seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and of all display instruments. There should be at least one hand width of clearance between the head and the roof frame. Your thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.
- Sit with the shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest rake so it is possible to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not angle the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum rake of approx. 25°.
- Adjust the seat and steering wheel in a way that the wrist rests on top of the steering wheel while the arm is fully extended and the shoulders are on the backrest.
- Adjust the steering wheel. See *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *93*.
- Adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *49*.
- Adjust the thigh support so there is a space of approx. two fingers wide between the edge of the seat and the hollow of the knee.
- Adjust the lumbar support so it supports the natural shape of the spine.

Seat Adjustment

⚠ Warning

Do not adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is moving as the seat could move suddenly causing the driver to lose control.

⚠ Warning

Before moving the seat, ensure the path both in front of and behind the seat is clear of obstructions.

Manual Seats

Drive only with seats and backrests engaged.

Note

The following shows all available configurations. Some may not be fitted to your vehicle.

Longitudinal Adjustment

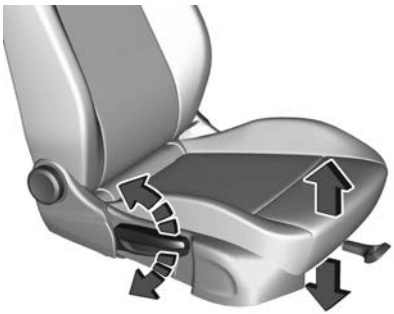
Lift the handle, slide the seat to the desired position then release the handle.

Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure the seat is locked in place.

Backrest Inclination

Turn the hand-wheel. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

Seat Height



Move the lever in a pumping motion:

up : seat higher

down : seat lower

Seat Inclination

Press the switch:

top : front end higher

bottom : front end lower

Lumbar Support

Adjust the lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.

To move the support up and down: push switch up or down.

To increase and decrease support: push switch forwards or backwards.

Adjustable Thigh Support

Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.

Power Seats

Note

The following shows all available configurations. Some may not be fitted to your vehicle.

Longitudinal Adjustment

Move the switch forward/backward.

Seat Height

Move the switch upward/downward.

Seat Inclination

Tilt the front of the switch upward/downward.

Backrest Inclination

Tilt the switch forward/backward.

Lumbar Support

Adjust the lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.

To move the support up and down: push switch up or down.

To increase and decrease support: push switch forwards or backwards.

Adjustable Thigh Support

Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.

Side Bolster

Adjust seat backrest width to suit personal requirements.

Memory Seats

Two different driver's seat and exterior mirror position settings can be stored.

Storing Memory Positions

1. Adjust the driver's seat and then adjust the exterior mirrors to desired positions.
2. Press and hold the MEM and 1 or 2 buttons simultaneously until a chime sounds.

Memory Position Recall

To move the seat to a memorised position, press and hold button 1 or 2 until the stored seat and exterior mirror positions are reached.

Releasing the button during seat movement cancels the recall.

Automatic Memory Position Recall

Memory positions are assigned to driver (1 or 2) using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter and are automatically recalled when the ignition is switched on.

In addition, a message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) indicates the driver number, identified by the used RKE transmitter. If the ignition is switched on more than three subsequent times with the same key, the message will not be displayed again until another key is used.

To stop recall movement, press one of the seat memory, power mirror, or power seat controls.

A precondition is that Personalisation By Driver and Auto Memory Recall is activated in the infotainment system Settings menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Easy Exit Function

To assist exiting the vehicle, the power driver seat moves rearwards when the vehicle is stationary and the following occurs.

To activate the easy exit function:

1. Move the shift lever to position P (Park).
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Open the driver's door. If the door is already open, switch off the ignition to activate easy exit.

To stop the movement, press one of the memory or power seat controls.

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Safety Function

If the driver's seat encounters resistance during movement, the recall may stop. After removing the obstruction, press and hold the appropriate memory position button for two seconds. Try recalling the memory position again.

If the recall does not operate, consult your dealer.

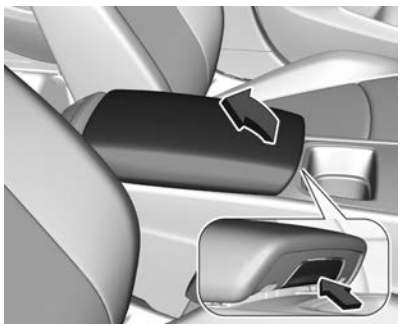
Overload

If the seat setting is electrically overloaded, the power supply is automatically cut off for a short time.

Note

After a collision in which the airbags have been deployed, the memory function for each position button will be deactivated.

Front Seat Armrest



Push the button and raise the armrest.

Under the armrest is a storage compartment and if equipped, a wireless charger. See *Wireless Charging* ⇨ *99*.

Ventilated Front Seats

Adjust ventilation to the desired setting by pressing for the seat one or more times. The lights in the button indicate the setting, three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

Ventilated seats are operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *209*.

Heated Front Seats

⚠ Warning

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.

Do not fit any seat cover (except genuine Holden accessory covers) to heated seats.

Adjust seat heating to the desired setting by pressing for the seat one or more times. The lights in the button indicate the setting, three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

Seat heating will be reduced automatically from the high to medium setting after 30 minutes.

Heated seats are operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *209*.

Automatic Seat Heating

The vehicle may have automatic seat heating which can be enabled in the Settings menu in the infotainment system. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

When enabled, the heating of the seats will be activated automatically at vehicle start. The activation is based on several parameters such as vehicle interior temperature, intensity and direction of the sun and the temperature setting of the electronic climate control system for the driver and passenger side.

As the vehicle's interior warms up, the seat heating level will be reduced automatically until it finally goes off.

The seat heating level being provided during automatic operation is indicated by the heated seat indicator lights.

If the passenger seat is unoccupied, the automatic seat heating feature will not activate for that seat.

The seat heating buttons can be pressed at any time to exit the automatic seat heating for the seat and control the seat heating manually instead.

Massage

Press the switch to turn on the back massage function.

To turn off, press the switch again. The current massage procedure will be ended, this may take a few seconds.

After ten minutes the massage function is switched off automatically.

Rear Seats

The vehicle may have a two-section or three-section rear seat backrest. All sections can be folded down.

Before folding the rear seat backrests, perform the following if required:

- Remove the load compartment cover. See *Boot Cover (Liftback)* ⇨ *83*.
- Lower the rear head restraints. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *49*.
- Remove the rear head restraints to allow the backrests to fully rest on the seat cushions. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *49*.

⚠ Warning

Do not press the release button on the top of the seatback while the vehicle is moving. This could cause damage or injuries to the occupants.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not allow passengers to sit on the folded seatbacks while the vehicle is in motion. Unrestrained luggage or passengers on a folded seatback could be thrown within or ejected from the vehicle in a sudden stop or accident.

Caution

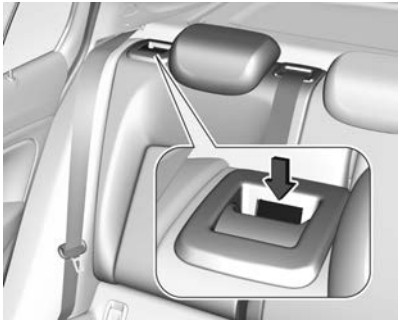
Do not trap the seat belt when returning the seatback or seat section to the upright position.

Two-Section Backrest

Fold up the rear armrest, if fitted.

Pull the release lever on the outer side and fold down the backrest onto the seat cushion. Repeat for the opposite side if desired.

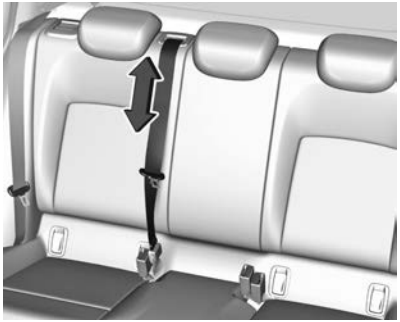
To fold up, ensure the seat belts are positioned away of the folding area and raise the backrest into an upright position until it engages audibly.



The backrest is securely engaged when the red mark near the release lever is no longer visible.

⚠ Warning

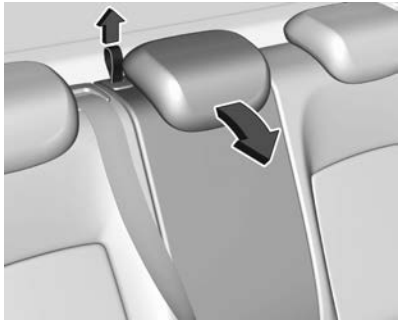
When folding the rear seat backrest, ensure the backrest is securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.



The centre seat belt might lock if the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the seat belt retractor, push in the seat belt and withdraw it approx. 20 mm, then release.

Three-Section Backrest

Fold up the rear armrest.

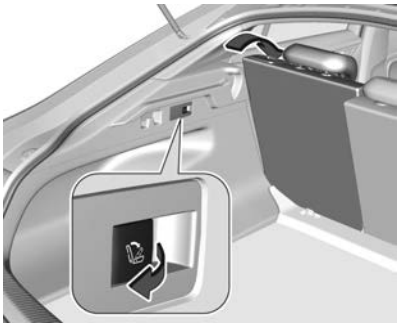


Pull the loop and fold down the centre backrest onto the seat cushion.

Pull the release lever on the outer side and fold down the backrest onto the seat cushion. Repeat for the opposite side if desired.

⚠ Warning

Take care when folding down the right outer seat backrest if the centre seat backrest is already folded down. There is a risk of injury due to the bolt protruding from the inner side of the backrest.



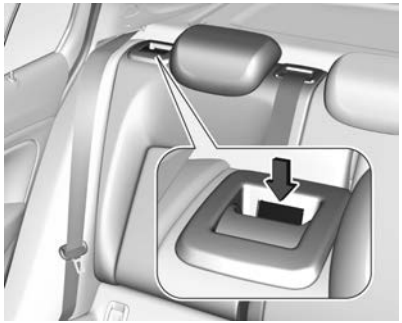
Alternatively, fold the seat backrests from the load compartment: Pull the lever on left or right side of the load compartment to fold the corresponding part of the rear seat backrest.

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the rear backrests from the load compartment. Folding the backrest requires considerable force. There is a risk of injury, particularly to children.

Ensure that nothing is attached to the rear seats or located on the seat cushion.

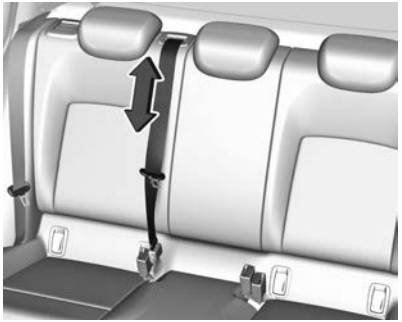
To fold up, ensure the seat belts are positioned away of the folding area and raise the backrest into an upright position until it engages audibly.



The backrests are securely engaged when the red mark near the release lever is no longer visible.

⚠ Warning

When folding the rear seat backrest, ensure the backrest is securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.



The centre seat belt might lock if the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the seat belt retractor, push in the seat belt and withdraw it approx. 20 mm, then release.

Rear Seat Armrest

The vehicle may have a rear seat armrest.

Fold the armrest down. The armrest contains cupholders.

Heated Rear Seats

⚠ Warning

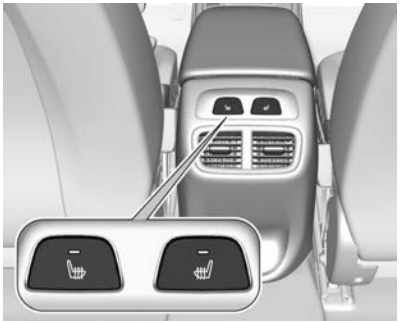
If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.

Do not fit any seat cover (except genuine Holden accessory covers) to heated seats.



Activate seat heating by pressing for the rear outer seat. Activation is indicated by a light in the button.

Press once more to deactivate seat heating.

Heated seats are operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *209*.

Seat Belts

How to Wear Seat Belts Properly

⚠ Warning

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

The seat belts are locked during heavy vehicle acceleration or deceleration, holding the occupants

in the seat. Thereby the risk of injury is considerably reduced. Fasten the seat belt before each trip.

Periodically check all parts of the seat belt system for damage, soiling and correct functionality. Ensure they draw out smoothly and retract correctly when not in use. Have damaged components replaced immediately.

Note

Ensure the seat belts are not damaged by sharp-edged objects or trapped in a door, etc. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

Seat Belt Reminder

Each seat is equipped with a seat belt reminder, indicated for front seats by and , or for rear seats by in the Driver Information Centre (DIC. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *116*.

Belt Force Limiters

During a collision, stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the belt.

Seat Belt Pretensioners

In the event of a head-on, rear-end or side-on collision of a certain severity, the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts are tightened by one pretensioner per seat.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners is indicated by continuous illumination of instrument cluster indicator . See *Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light* ⇨ *110*.

Seat belt pretensioners can only be triggered once and then must be replaced.

Note

- Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt pretensioners.
- Do not make any modifications to belt pretensioner components.

Three-Point Seat Belt

Fitting

The belt should not be twisted. It should lie flat and fit firmly across your hips.

1. Pull the metal tongue across your body.
2. Clip it into the buckle.
3. When the metal tongue is locked safely into place you will hear a click.
4. Give a gentle pull on the buckle to ensure full engagement.

5. Settle the belt at the hip.
6. Run your hand under the sash from hip to shoulder.

The belt should fit comfortably. Any extra belt length retracts automatically.

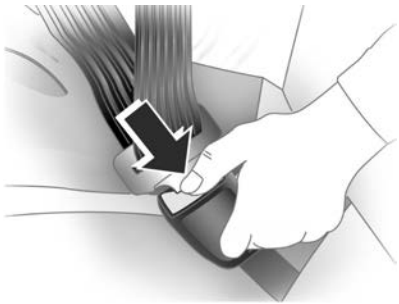
Note

For your safety, wear the lap section of the seat belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist or abdomen.

The Emergency-locking Retractor Belt allows you to move while the vehicle is travelling normally, but locks immediately on fast braking, impact with a solid object or any quick movement by the wearer.

Rear seat belts feature an Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR). If the shoulder portion of a rear seat belt is pulled out all the way, the locking feature may be engaged. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again. See *Child Restraint Installation Locations* ⇨ 77.

Removing



1. Press the release button on the buckle.
2. Allow the belt to retract.
3. Check that it fully retracts without twisting or turning.

Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy

Seat belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear a seat belt.

A pregnant woman should wear a three point belt with the lap portion of the belt worn as low as possible below the rounding of their stomach, throughout the pregnancy.

Seat Belt Care

⚠ Warning

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Warning

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

Airbag System

When triggered, airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

⚠ Danger

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system.

The driver should sit back as far as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. Sitting too close to the airbag can cause death or serious injury when it inflates.

Always wear a seat belt.

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

⚠ Warning

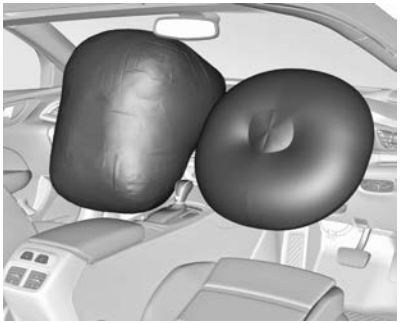
Airbags are part of the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) as they assist, but do not replace seat belts.

Airbags do not deploy in every accident. Various factors dictate whether they deploy including speed, angle of collision and object hit. Airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is hit from the rear or is involved in a rollover. Seat belts must be worn by all passengers whenever the vehicle is moving.

Airbags inflate with great force. If you are too close to an inflating airbag it may cause injury.

Seat belts help keep you in position for airbag inflation in the event of a collision.

Front Airbag System



The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the instrument panel on the passenger side. These are identified by the word AIRBAG.

⚠ Warning

The horn pad must not be covered with adhesive or any other material.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

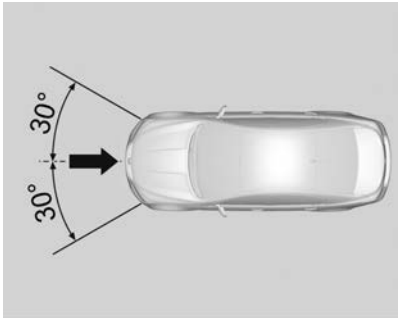
The driver should adjust the seat as far rearward as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Do not place any objects on or over the instrument panel or between an airbag and yourself.

Do not hang anything from the sun visor or mirror.

Passengers must not rest their feet on the instrument panel.



Front airbags will inflate in certain severe frontal or near frontal impacts. Front airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the side, rear or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

Side Airbag System

Side Impact Airbags (SIAB) are stored in the outer side of the front seats and can be identified by the word AIRBAG.

Note

SIAB deploy in most, but not all, severe side impacts.

Because there is limited time available to detect some side impacts, it is not possible to deploy the SIAB in all serious accidents.

A SIAB will deploy in certain severe side impacts. SIAB are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the front, rear, or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

⚠ Warning

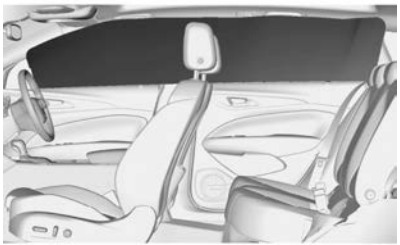
Do not fit unauthorised seat covers as they may impair the deployment of the Side Impact Airbags (SIAB).

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) between front seats and doors.

Do not lean on, or sleep against, the door. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

Curtain Airbag System



Curtain airbags are stored in the roof on each side of the vehicle. They can be identified by the word AIRBAG on the roof pillars.

The curtain airbags deploy in most, but not all severe side impacts. The risk of injury to the head in the event of a side impact is considerably reduced.

⚠ Warning

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) in the area in which the airbag inflates.

There must be no objects in the area in which the airbag inflates. Refer to the illustration.

Use the hooks above the doors only to hang up light articles of clothing.

Do not place any objects in the pockets of the hanging items.

Do not hold onto the assist grips (above the doors) while seated in the vehicle.

Do not lean on, or sleep against the front or rear doors. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

Airbags inflate and deflate within milliseconds.

Fifteen seconds after any airbag or seat belt pretensioner has been activated (the vehicle has stopped and provided there is battery power), the following will occur:

- The engine will switch off.
- The fuel pump will switch off.
- The hazard lamps will switch on.
- The interior lamp will switch on.
- The doors will unlock.

Switch the ignition off and then on if restarting the engine is required.

Notices for Customer Installed Equipment

⚠ Warning

The fitting of roo bars may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling. See “Fitting roo bars” under *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *280*.

Airbag System Check

The in the instrument cluster illuminates for a few seconds when the ignition is turned on. This indicates the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) is operational.

Contact a Holden Dealer immediately:

- If does not illuminate when the ignition is turned on.
- If illuminates when driving.
- If the warning 'Airbag Fault' is displayed on the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

  In these instances the SRS may not function correctly in the event of an accident. See *Airbag System* ⇨ *68*.

Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

Note

After an accident where the SRS has deployed, the systems, associated parts and hardware must be checked and replaced as required.

Seats, associated parts and hardware must also be checked and replaced as required.

The SRS should also be inspected after an accident if:

- The instrument panel area or steering wheel is scratched, cracked or damaged.
- The front seats and upholstery are damaged.

- The headliner or trim panels are damaged.

It is recommended that this work be carried out by a Holden Dealer or approved repairer.

Child Restraints

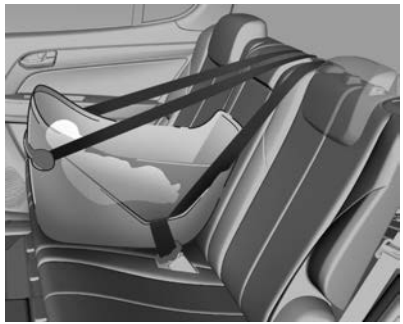
Older Children

A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat.
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach.
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest.
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip.

Infants and Young Children

Infants



Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

Young Children

Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

Booster Seats

Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

Child Restraint Systems

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

⚠ Warning

This manual provides you with general information concerning child restraints only.

The driver is required by law to ensure that passengers and pets are suitably restrained. In most States and Territories of Australia, and in New Zealand, specific laws may exist which require children to be seated in approved child restraints and/or in certain locations within the vehicle.

Holden strongly recommends that you refer to your specific State or Territory regulations to determine which child restraint and seat location is suitable for your child.

⚠ Warning

Always ensure that the seat belt fits firmly around the child restraint, as applicable to the type of restraint used.

If a child cannot see out of the window, do not raise him/her by means of an ordinary cushion. It will not stay in place in a collision and the child can slip out of the straps and become entangled.

⚠ Warning

Always follow the child restraint manufacturer's fitting instructions when installing a child restraint into the vehicle.

Note

Refer to the relevant legislation, an approved child restraint fitting station or capsule manufacturer's information for the recommended type of child restraint to use.

Selecting the Right System

Infants

Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

Young children

Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

Booster seats

Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

Older children

A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the rear seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip

Where to Put the Restraint

⚠ Warning

It is safest for children to be seated in the rear seat.

Only child restraints that have clips to attach to the vehicle's anchorage fitting (as shown in the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

following illustrations) are to be used. Earlier types of child restraints may not attach securely to this type of anchor.

Use only Standards Australia and New Zealand approved child restraints and harnesses. Only purchase a child restraint which carries the appropriate Standards Australia sticker of approval.

Australian States and Territories and New Zealand have laws restricting the seating of children in the front passenger seat. In most jurisdictions, children under 4 years should not be seated in the front passenger seat. Check your local road safety regulations before seating a child in the front seat.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

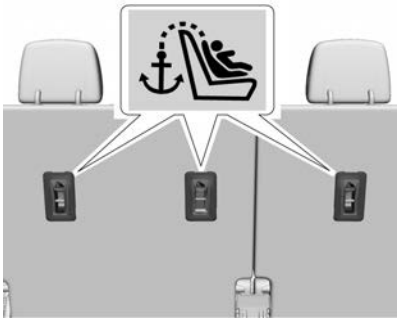
Where legally allowable, you may install a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, but always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go.

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Note

If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, please contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

Top Tether Anchor Fittings



Top tether anchors are located on the back of the rear seat backs and are identified with symbol .

Do not attach anything other than a child restraint system to the vehicle top tether anchors.

Child Restraint Installation Locations

The vehicle has been designed to accommodate child restraints on the rear seat.

When using a child restraint, read the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint and follow the directions for fitting carefully.

Secure the child in the restraint in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Seat Belts

ALR seat belts are provided at the rear seating positions. Use these in conjunction with a top tether strap when a non-ISOFIX child seat is being used.

Extend the seat belt fully and then fit the belt around the applicable locations on the child restraint and fasten the buckle. Refer to the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint.

Allow the belt to retract. While the belt is retracting, a clicking noise can be heard which indicates the ALR mechanism is functioning. The seat belt is locked and cannot be extended until fully retracted, enabling the belt to be fitted securely to the child restraint.

To release the locking mechanism, undo the buckle and allow the seat belt to fully retract. It will then function as a normal Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) seat belt until fully extended again.

ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems

ISOFIX mounting locations are marked by a on the rear seat back.

Open the cover and fasten the vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint to the ISOFIX mounting brackets.

Note

Ensure the seat belt buckles are placed out of the way of the child seat.

In addition to the ISOFIX mounting brackets, fasten the top-tether strap to the top-tether anchor points.

Pedestrian Protection System

The pedestrian protection system can help reduce injury to pedestrians in the case of a frontal collision.

When the sensors in the front bumper detect a certain impact within a speed range of 25 km/h to 50 km/h, the rear of the bonnet is lifted to reduce pedestrian head injuries.

In addition, the front bumper is designed to reduce leg injuries to pedestrians.

The active bonnet can be triggered only once and remains in the raised position. A message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Have the actuators, hinges and bonnet replaced as soon as possible.

⚠ Warning

Do not drive with the bonnet raised.

⚠ Warning

After any frontal collision the front bumper may appear to be intact, however, the sensors may be damaged. Consult a dealer to verify correct functionality of the sensors.

The system may not trigger under the following conditions:

- The impact is out of sensor range.
- The sensors are damaged or are blocked by accessories.
- The bonnet is blocked by snow or ice.
- The vehicle speed is not within the correct range.
- The object is too small.

Manual Bonnet Lowering

⚠ Warning

After the system has triggered, the bonnet hinges are hot. Do not touch.

The triggered bonnet can be manually lowered to enable temporarily driving to a dealer or repairer:

1. Pull the bonnet release lever.

2. Push the safety catch to the left and open the bonnet approx. 20 cm. Then lower it slowly without engaging the catch.
3. Push each rear corner of the bonnet down with both hands in small steps, alternating between the right and left sides.

⚠ Warning

Keep away from the edge of the bonnet to prevent injuries.

4. Check the bonnet is engaged at the rear.
5. Close the bonnet at the front and check it is engaged securely.

Storage

Storage Compartments
Storage Compartments 80
Glove Box 80
Cupholders 80
Front Storage 81
Sunglasses Storage 81
Armrest Storage 82
Rear Storage 82
Centre Console Storage 82

Additional Storage Features
Boot Cover (Liftback) 83
Rear Floor Storage Cover 83
Cargo Cover (Sportwagon, Tourer) 84
Cargo Tie-Downs 85
Convenience Net 86

Roof Rack System
Roof Rack System 89

Information on Loading the Vehicle
Information on Loading the Vehicle 90

Storage Compartments

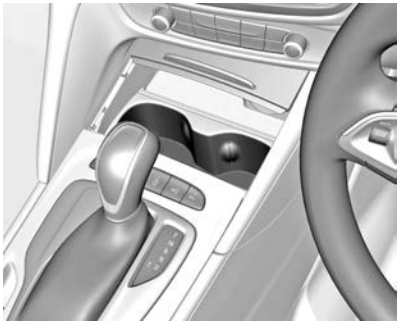
⚠ Warning

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in storage compartments. In a crash, these objects may cause the cover to open and could result in injury.

Glove Box

Open the glovebox by lifting the lever. The glovebox should be closed whilst driving.

Cupholders



Cupholders are located in the centre console behind a cover. Push cover forward to open.

Cupholders are also located in the rear armrest. Fold down the armrest, if equipped.

Front Storage

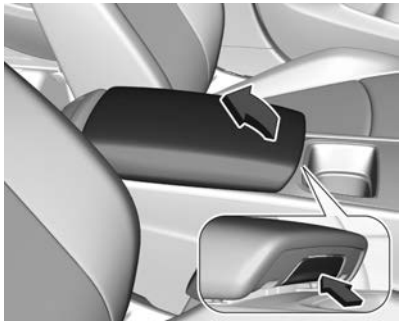
A storage box is located in the centre console. Push cover forward to open.

Sunglasses Storage

Push to fold down and open.

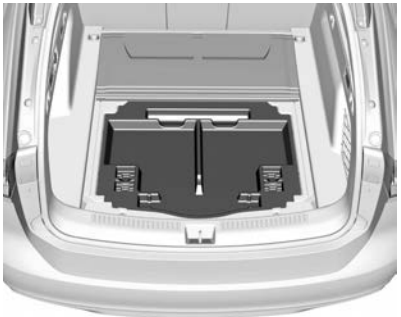
Do not use for storing heavy objects.

Armrest Storage



Push the button and raise the armrest.

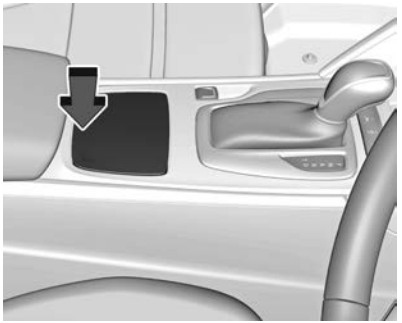
Rear Storage



A storage tray may be located in the load compartment. Open the rear floor cover to gain access. See *Rear Floor Storage Cover* ⇨ *83*.

Centre Console Storage

The storage compartment may be located under a cover and can be used to store small items.



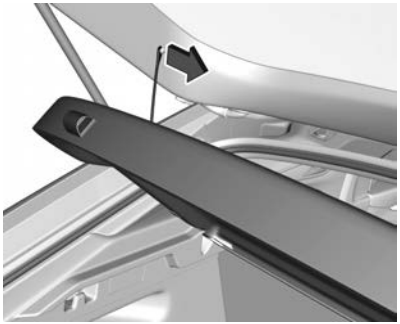
Press the rear of the cover to open.

Additional Storage Features

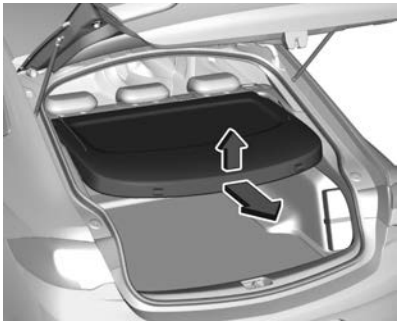
Boot Cover (Liftback)

Do not place any objects on the cover.

Removal



Unhook the retaining straps from the tailgate.



Lift the cover at the rear and then at the front.

Remove the cover.

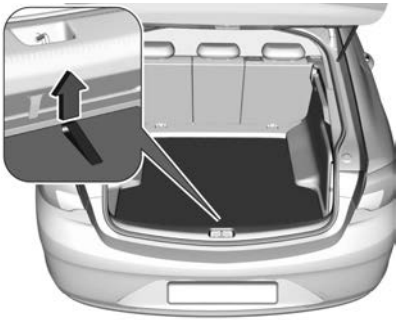
Installation

Engage the cover in the side guides and insert downwards.

Attach the retaining straps to the tailgate.

Rear Floor Storage Cover

Liftback

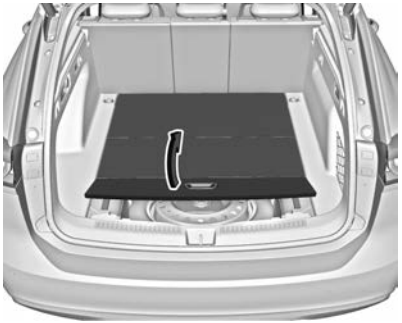


The rear floor cover can be removed.

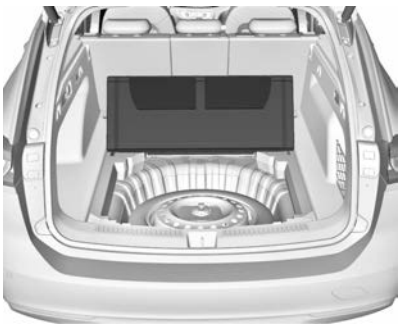
Raise cover at the loop and remove.

Sportwagon, Tourer

The rear floor cover can be folded or removed.



Pull the handle and fold the rear part of the cover forward.



Set the folded cover upright behind the rear seat backrests, or remove it from the vehicle.

Cargo Cover (Sportwagon, Tourer)

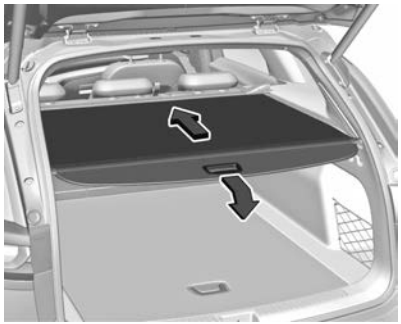
Use the cargo cover to provide added security for items stored beneath.

> **⚠ Warning**
>
> Do not place objects on the cargo cover. Sudden stops or turns can cause objects to be thrown in the vehicle. You or others could be injured.

Closing

Using the handle, pull the cover towards the rear and upwards until it engages in the side trim retainers.

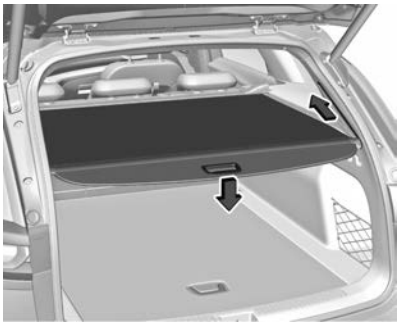
Opening



Pull the cover handle to the rear and downwards.

The cover rolls up automatically.

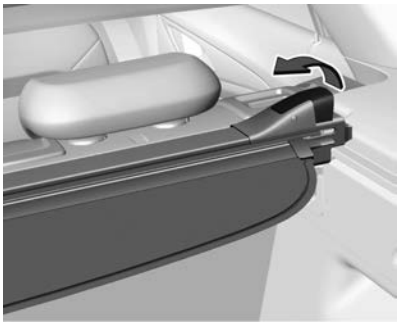
Opening in Load Position



Press the cover handle.

The rear of the cover is guided upwards automatically.

Removal



Open the cover.

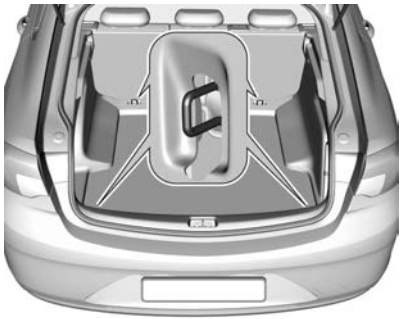
From the right-hand side, pull and hold the release lever up.

Lift the cover first on the right side and then remove it from the recesses.

Installation

Insert the left side of the cover in its recess, then pull and hold the release lever up. Insert the right-hand side of the cover in the recess and engage.

Cargo Tie-Downs



The cargo tie-downs are designed to secure items against slippage and are to be used in conjunction with straps or a luggage net.

⚠ Warning

Always make sure the load is secure and will not move during heavy braking or a collision.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Unsecured loads increase the risk of injury during heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres or a collision.

Use only approved tie-down straps and convenience net to secure your loads. Do not use elasticised straps.

Never attach more than one tie-down strap to any single cargo tie-down.

Protect the tie-down straps from sharp edges of the load. Replace them if they begin to wear.

Make sure the back seat is locked in the upright position whenever carrying heavy loads. This is a basic requirement for protection against load displacement in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

The rear seat in the upright position provides greater protection against load displacement.

The driving characteristics of the vehicle can be affected because the centre of gravity is altered when there is a load in the cargo area. Match your speed and driving style according to how the vehicle is loaded.

Make sure the rear axle load of the vehicle is not exceeded. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight ⇨ 345*.

The maximum load for the tie-down system is 80 kg single mass when used in conjunction with the Holden approved straps.

That is, if an object weighs 80 kg, only one object can be held by the tie-down system.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not use when there are visible signs of wear or damage.

Place loads as low down and as far forward in the cargo area as possible. That is, against the back seat.

Convenience Net

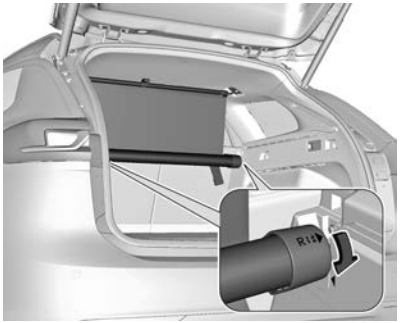
The convenience net can be installed behind the rear seats. If the rear seat backrests are folded, the convenience net can also be installed behind the front seats.

Important: Passengers must not travel behind the convenience net.

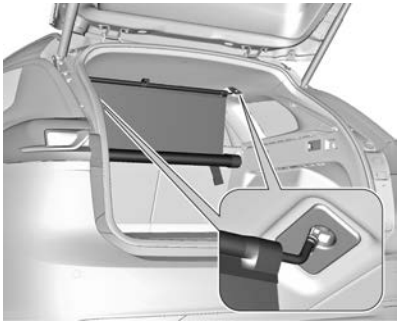
Behind the Rear Seats

Installation

1. Remove the load compartment cover, see *Cargo Cover (Sportwagon, Tourer) ⇨ 84*.



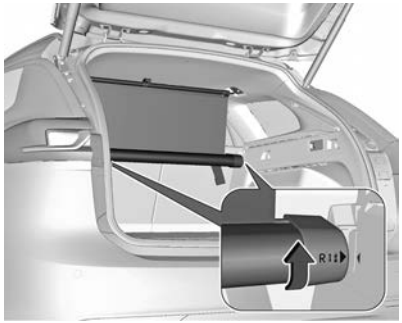
2. Insert the convenience net cassette into the retainers on the left and right sides. Note the marks L (left side) and R (right side) on the cassette.
3. Turn the cassette slightly until the arrows face each other to lock the cassette.



4. Pull the convenience net rod out of the cassette and engage the rod into the installation opening on one side of the roof frame.
5. Compress the rod slightly and engage at the other side.

Removal

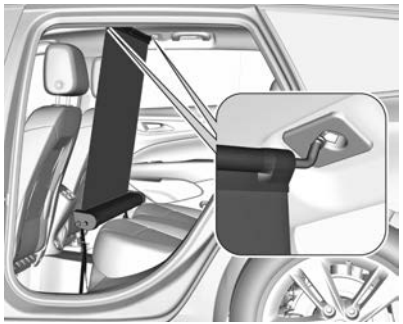
1. Remove and compress one side of the convenience net rod from the installation opening.
2. Remove the other side of the rod from the installation opening.
3. Roll up the safety net.



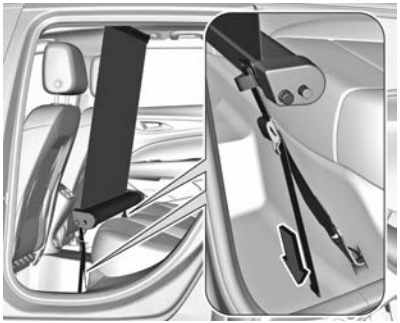
4. Turn the cassette slightly to unlock and remove from the retainers.

Behind the Front Seats

Installation



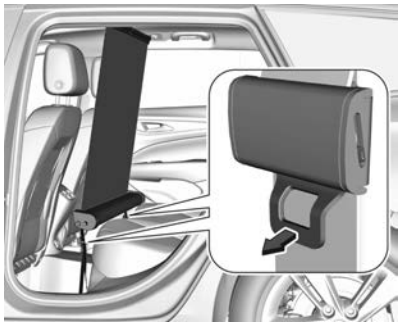
1. Engage the convenience net rod into the installation opening on one side of the roof frame.
2. Compress the rod slightly and engage the other side.
3. Pull the convenience net rod out of the cassette.



4. Attach the hooks to the loops in the floor in front of the rear seats.

   To access the loops, push the perforated opening in the floor covering on both sides.
5. Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.
6. Fold the rear head restraints down and fold the rear seats forward, see *Rear Seats* ⇨ *61*.

Removal



1. Pull the tightener on both sides to release the straps.
2. Remove and compress one side of the convenience net rod from the installation opening.
3. Remove the other side of rod from the installation opening.
4. Roll up the convenience net.
5. Detach the hooks from the floor loops.

Roof Rack System

A Holden genuine roof rack system can be purchased as an accessory and used to load items.

For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, only the approved roof rack is recommended. For further information, contact your dealer.

⚠ Warning

Ensure all objects carried on the roof rack system are loaded evenly and are secured tightly with straps.

Never carry objects that are longer or wider than the vehicle unless using a Holden certified accessory carrier.

Caution

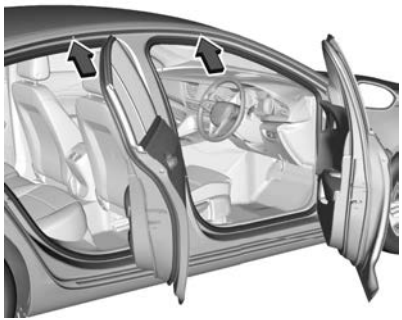
The load, including the weight of the roof rack, must not exceed 100 kg.

To prevent damage or loss of cargo when driving, check to ensure the roof rack and cargo are securely fastened.

Loading cargo on the roof rack will make the vehicle's centre of gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking, or abrupt manoeuvres; otherwise loss of control may result.

Fitting

Liftback



Open all doors. The mounting points are located in each door frame of the vehicle's body.

Fasten the roof rack according to the installation instructions supplied with the roof rack.

Remove the roof rack when not in use.

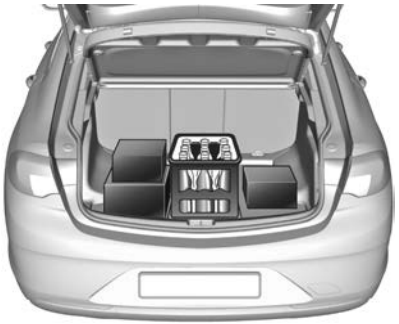
Sportwagon, Tourer

Mounting points are located in each roof railing.

Fasten the roof rack on the first two mounting points according to the installation instructions supplied with the roof rack.

Remove the roof rack when not in use.

Information on Loading the Vehicle



- Heavy objects in the load compartment should be placed against the seat backrests. Ensure the backrests are securely engaged and the red markings near the release lever are not visible.

  If objects are going to be stacked, heavier objects should be placed at the bottom.
- Secure loose objects in the load compartment to prevent them from sliding. Secure the load with straps attached to the cargo tie-down points. See *Cargo Tie-Downs* ⇨ *85*.
- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Do not place any objects on the load compartment cover or the instrument panel, and do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.
- Do not place objects in the area where the front, side, or curtain airbags inflate.
- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear shift lever, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.
- Do not drive with an open load compartment.

- Do not exceed the maximum vehicle carrying capacity or vehicle axle loads. Overloading is a safety hazard. See *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *345*.
- Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher centre of gravity. Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps.

  Check and retighten the straps frequently.

  Adjust the tyre pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions.

  The permissible roof load is 100 kg. The roof load is the combined weight of the roof rack and the load.

Carrying Portable Gas Cylinders in Vehicles

⚠ Warning

Gas cylinders can leak, creating a risk of fire or explosion. As a precaution, ensure adequate ventilation when carrying gas cylinders. They must be restrained from rolling around, and where possible, placed in the load area of the vehicle.

It is recommended that if gas cylinders are frequently transported, that a purpose-built carrying compartment be used. Ensure any transportation of gas cylinders complies with the applicable regulations.

Instruments and Controls

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment 93
Steering Wheel Controls 93
Horn 94
Windshield Wiper/Washer 94
Rear Window Wiper/Washer (Sportwagon, Tourer) 96
Outside Temperature 97
Clock 97
Power Outlets 97
Wireless Charging 99

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Instrument Cluster 100
Speedometer 105
Odometer 106
Trip Odometer 106
Tachometer 107
Fuel Gauge 107
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 108
Service Display 108
Turn Signal 110
Seat Belt Reminders 110
Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light 110
Charging System Light 111
Malfunction Indicator Lamp ... 111
Brake System Warning Light 111
Electric Parking Brake Light 112
Service Electric Parking Brake Light 112
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 112
Gear Shifting Light 112
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light 112
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 113
Pedestrian Ahead Indicator ... 113
Follow Distance Indicator Light 113
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light 113
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/ Warning Light 113
Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light 113
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light 114
Pre-Heat Light 114
Engine Oil Pressure Light 114
Low Fuel Warning Light 114
AdBlue Warning Light 114
Immobiliser Light 114
High-Beam On Light 115
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light 115
Front Fog Lamp Light 115
Rear Fog Light 115
Lamps On Reminder 115
Cruise Control Light 115
Door Ajar Light 115

Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC) 116
Head-Up Display (HUD) 124

Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages 127
Warning Chimes 128
Battery Voltage and Charging Messages 128

Vehicle Personalisation

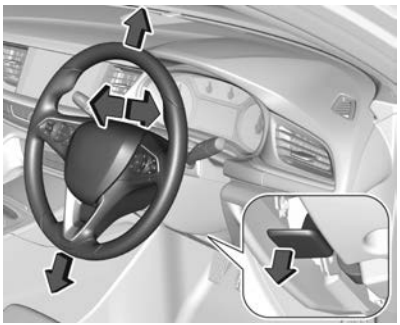
Vehicle Personalisation 129

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment

⚠ Warning

Do not attempt to adjust the steering wheel while driving.



Unlock the lever below the steering column. Adjust the steering wheel and then engage lever. Ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust the steering wheel unless the vehicle is stationary and the steering wheel lock has been released.

Steering Wheel Controls

Driver Information Centre (DIC) menus, the infotainment system and a connected mobile phone, and some driver assistance systems can be operated via the controls on the steering wheel.

The illustrations show different versions.

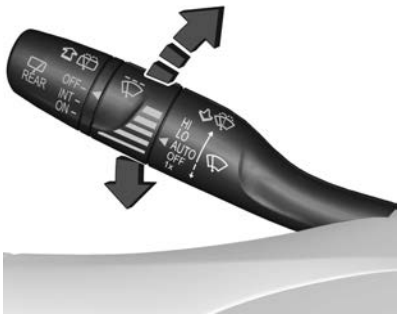
See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *116*, *Overview* ⇨ *143*, *Driver Assistance Systems* ⇨ *230*.

Horn

Press .

Windshield Wiper/Washer

Windscreen Wiper



HI : fast

LO : slow

AUTO : automatic wiping with rain sensor

OFF : off

In AUTO position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever downwards to position **1x**.

Caution
Never operate the wipers on dry glass, as this will damage the rubber and scratch the glass.

Do not use if the windscreen is iced over. Switch off in car washes.

Adjusting Rain Sensor Sensitivity

Wiper lever in position AUTO.

Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Caution

Switch off the rain sensor by setting the lever to the **OFF** position before entering a car wash.

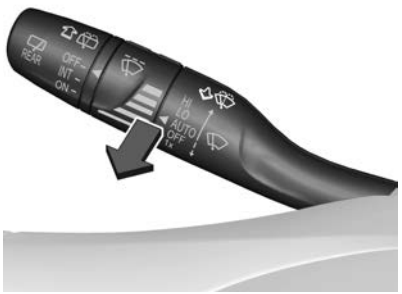
Replace the wiper blades as soon as they do not completely remove water from the windscreen. If the blades are not replaced, the wipers may continue to wipe even though most of the screen is dry.

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, make sure that the windscreen is fully defrosted before switching on the rain sensor.

Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

The rain sensor function can be activated or deactivated. When it is deactivated, the wipers operate as manual intermittent wipers. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Windscreen Washer



Pull the lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper operates a few times.

See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *297*.

Rear Window Wiper/ Washer (Sportwagon, Tourer)

Rear Window Wiper

Turn the outer cap to activate the rear window wiper:

OFF : off

INT : intermittent operation

ON : continuous operation

Caution
Never operate the wipers on dry glass, as this will damage the rubber and scratch the glass.

Do not use if the rear window is frozen. Switch off in car washes.

The rear window wiper operates automatically when the windscreen wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Rear Window Washer

Push the lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper operates a few times.

The rear window washer system is deactivated when the fluid level is low. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *297*.

Outside Temperature

The outside temperature is displayed in the infotainment screen when the ignition is on.

A drop in temperature is indicated immediately and a rise in temperature after a time delay.

The illustration shows an example.

If the outside temperature drops to 3 °C, a warning message may be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Clock

Set the time and date in the infotainment system. See *Settings* ⇨ *182*.

Power Outlets

A 12 volt power outlet is located in the centre console. With the ignition off, this power outlet is deactivated.

A 12 volt power outlet may be located at the left side in the load compartment. With the ignition off, the power outlet remains active.

⚠ Warning

Do not use the load compartment power socket for a long period with the engine off as the vehicle battery may become flat.

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 watts.

Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, such as electrical charging devices or batteries. Do not damage the outlets by using unsuitable plugs.

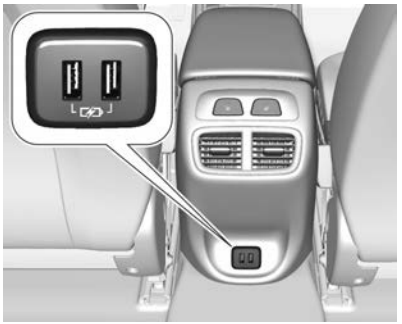
USB Ports

Two USB ports for charging devices are located below the console armrest. These USB ports also include a data connection to the infotainment system. See *USB Port* ⇨ *154*.

Note

Vehicles with navigation system: An SD card slot is provided for navigation map cards. Do not remove the SD card or use the card slot for any other purpose.

USB Charging Ports

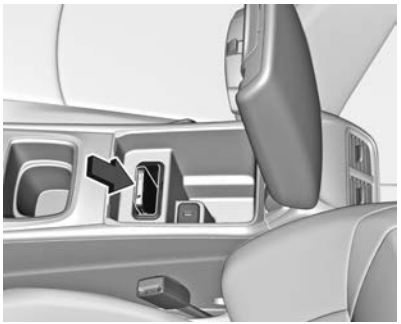


Two USB ports for charging devices only are located in the back of the centre console.

Wireless Charging

⚠ Warning

Wireless charging can affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.



The vehicle may have a wireless charging slot located below the front armrest.

To charge a compatible mobile device the ignition must be switched on.

⚠ Warning

Remove any metal objects from the charging device before charging a mobile phone, as these objects could become very hot.

To charge a mobile device:

1. Remove all objects from the charging slot, otherwise the system may not charge.
2. Insert the mobile device with the display facing to the rear in the charging slot. Charging status is indicated in the infotainment display and shows if mobile device is correctly positioned.

If is not displayed, remove mobile device from the slot. Turn mobile device 180 degrees and wait three seconds before inserting mobile device again.

Note

- PMA or Qi compatible mobile devices can be charged wirelessly.
- A back cover with an integrated coil (e.g. Samsung® 4 and 5) or a jacket (e.g. some iPhone® models) may be required to charge a mobile device.
- The mobile device must be smaller than 8 cm in width and 15 cm in length to fit into the charging device. A protective cover for the mobile phone could have an impact on wireless charging.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Instrument Cluster

Depending on the model, three instrument clusters are available.

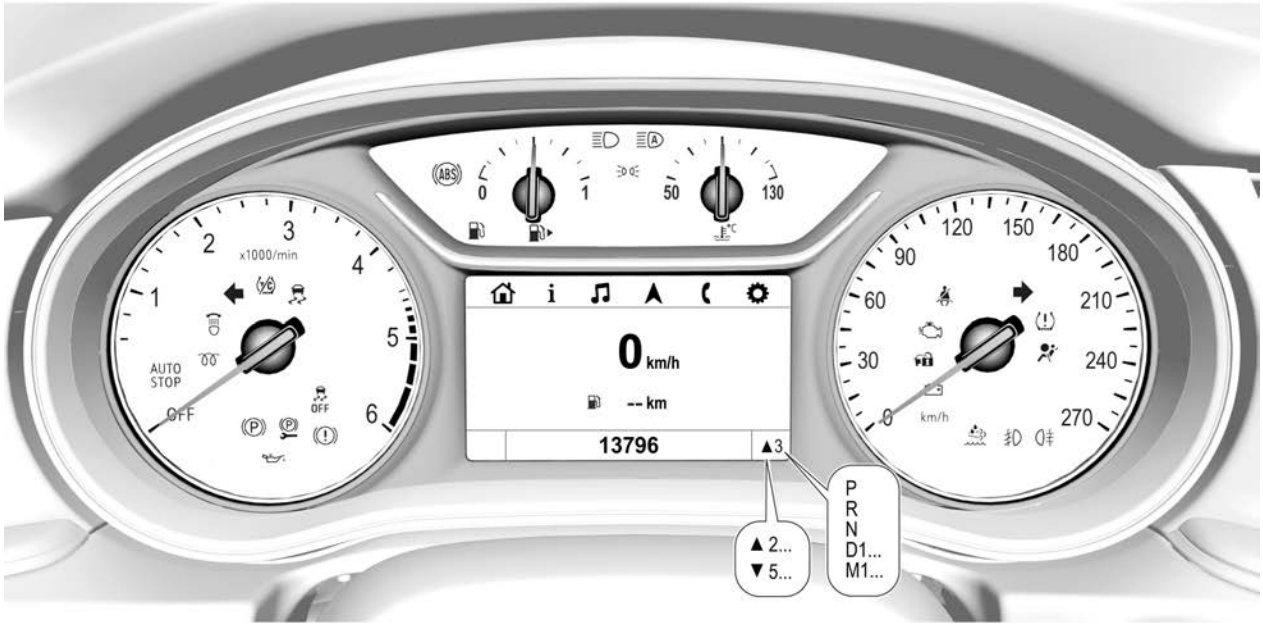
The Calais-V, RS-V, VXR and Calais-V Tourer instrument cluster can be displayed in Sport mode or Touring mode. The left and right-hand minor gauges can also be changed. See Display Theme and Pocket Gauges under “Options Page Items” in *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *116*.

Note

Displays may vary depending on vehicle options and equipment.

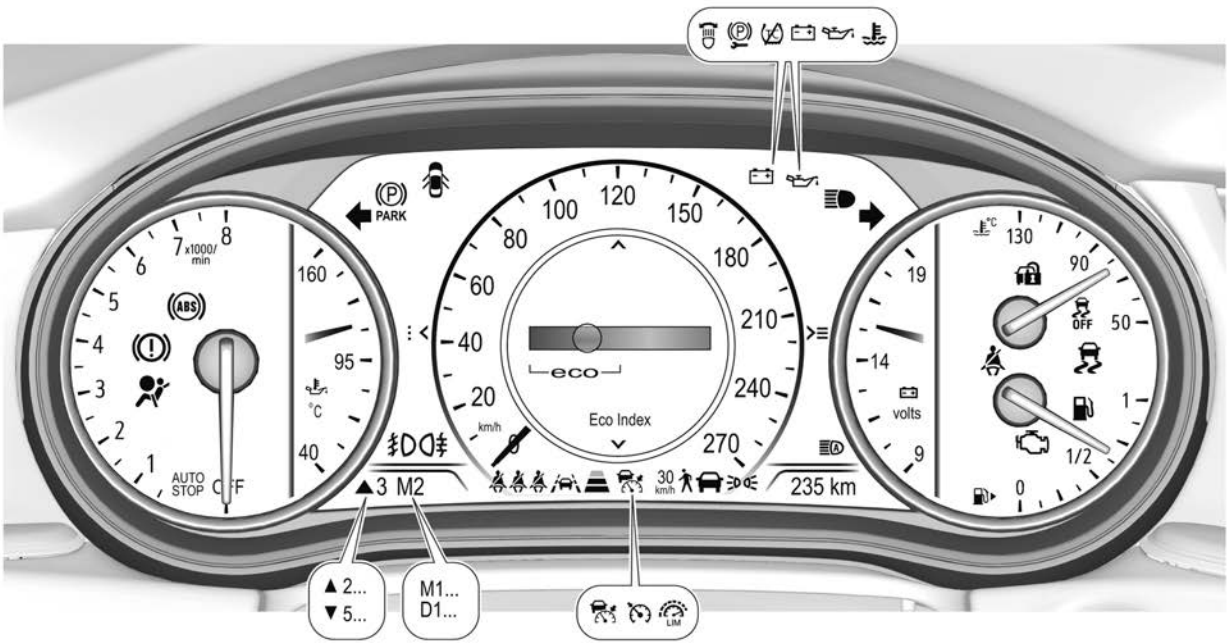
LT, RS, Calais Tourer (Police)

Calais, Calais Tourer

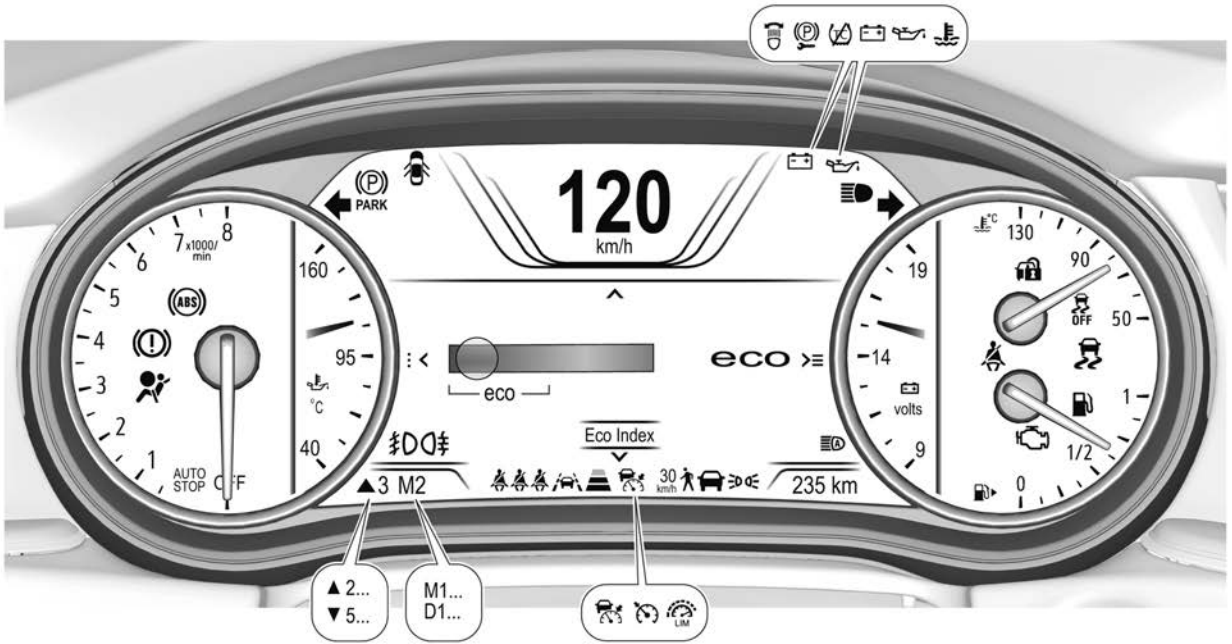


Calais-V, RS-V, VXR, Calais-V Tourer

Sport Mode



Touring Mode



Overview

: Adaptive cruise control, see *Cruise Control Light* ⇨ *115*

: *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light* ⇨ *115*

: *AdBlue Warning Light* ⇨ *114*

: *Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light* ⇨ *110*

: *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* ⇨ *112*

: *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *111*

: *Charging System Light* ⇨ *111*

: *Cruise Control Light* ⇨ *115*

: *Door Ajar Light* ⇨ *115*

: *Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *112*

: *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light* ⇨ *113*

: *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light* ⇨ *113*

: *Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light* ⇨ *114*

: *Engine Oil Pressure Light* ⇨ *114*

: *Follow Distance Indicator Light* ⇨ *113*

: *Front Fog Lamp Light* ⇨ *115*

: *Rear Fog Light* ⇨ *115*

: *Gear Shifting Light* ⇨ *112*

: *High-Beam On Light* ⇨ *115*

: High Beam Assist, see *High-Beam On Light* ⇨ *115*

: *Immobiliser Light* ⇨ *114*

: *Lamps On Reminder* ⇨ *115*

: *Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light* ⇨ *112*

: *Low Fuel Warning Light* ⇨ *114*

: *Malfunction Indicator Lamp* ⇨ *111*

: *Pedestrian Ahead Indicator* ⇨ *113*

: *Pre-Heat Light* ⇨ *114*

: *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *110*

: *Service Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *112*

: *Speed Limiter* ⇨ *247*

: *Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light* ⇨ *113*

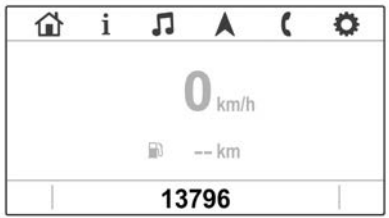
: *Turn Signal* ⇨ *110*

: *Vehicle Ahead Indicator* ⇨ *113*

Speedometer

Indicates vehicle speed.

Odometer



The total recorded distance the vehicle has travelled in km is displayed in the lower area of the Driver Information Display (DIC).

Note

Calais, Calais Tourer shown, others similar.

On some models, when the engine is started, the odometer display is replaced by the rear seat belt reminders until the vehicle is driven a short distance.

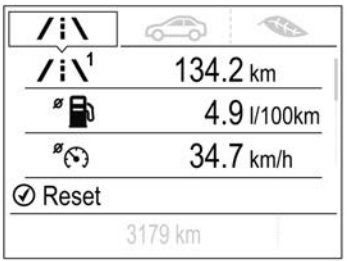
Trip Odometer

The recorded distance, fuel economy and average speed since the last reset is displayed on the trip page.

The trip odometer counts up to 9,999 km and then restarts at 0.

Two trip pages are selectable for different trips.

LT, RS, Calais Tourer (Police)

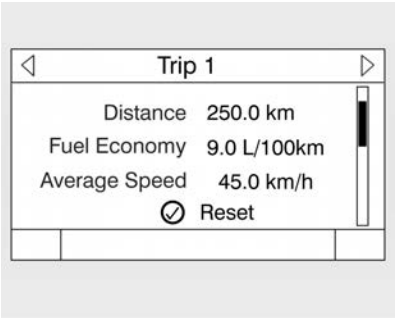


Select ⁄ ⁞ \ by pressing **Menu** on the turn signal lever.

Turn the adjuster wheel on the turn signal lever and select ⁄ ⁞ \ ¹ or ⁄ ⁞ \ ².

Each trip page can be reset separately by pressing **SET/CLR** on the indicator signal lever for a few seconds while the respective menu is displayed.

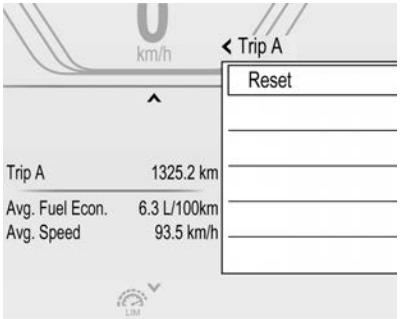
Calais, Calais Tourer



Select **Info** page ⓘ on the main menu. Choose page **Trip 1** or **Trip 2** by pressing ▽ on the steering wheel.

Each trip can be reset separately by pressing ✓ on the steering wheel.

Calais-V, RS-V, VXR, Calais-V Tourer



Select **Info** page on the main menu. Choose page **Trip A** or **Trip B** by pressing ▽ on the steering wheel.

Each trip can be reset separately when ignition is on: Select the page, press ▷.

Confirm by pressing ✓.

Tachometer

Displays the engine speed. As much as possible, drive with a low engine speed range for each gear.

Caution
If the needle is in the red warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. The engine is at risk. Reduce engine speed.

Fuel Gauge

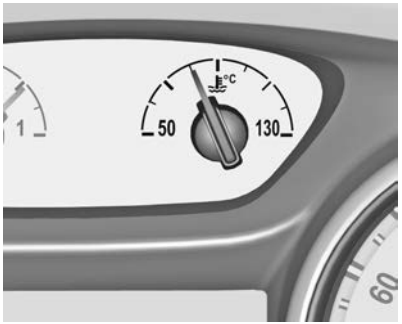
Displays the fuel level within the fuel tank.

The arrow indicates the vehicle side where the fuel filler door is located.

illuminates if the fuel level is low. Refuel immediately if it flashes. Never run the fuel tank dry.

Because of fuel remaining in the tank, the top-up quantity may be less than the specified fuel tank capacity.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



Displays the engine coolant temperature.

50° : engine operating temperature not yet reached

90° (central area) : normal operating temperature

130° : temperature too high

Note

If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop the vehicle, idle the engine and check the coolant level. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *296*.

Service Display

The engine oil life system informs you when to change the engine oil and filter. Based on driving conditions, the interval at which an engine oil and filter change will be indicated can vary considerably.

The remaining oil life menu is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *116*.

To view the remaining oil life.

For vehicles with MENU button on the turn signal lever:

- Select the menu by pressing **MENU** on the indicator lever.

  Turn the adjuster wheel to select the Remaining Oil Life page.

For vehicles with steering wheel control switches:

- Calais, Calais Tourer: Navigate to the Info page i by pressing ◁ or ▷ on the steering wheel. Press ▽ to select the Remaining Oil Life page.
- Calais-V, RS-V, VXR, Calais-V Tourer: Navigate to the Info page i by pressing ◁ on the steering wheel, scroll using ▽ and confirm by pressing ✓.

  Press ▽ to select the Remaining Oil Life page.

Remaining oil life duration is indicated as a percentage, so if 95% is displayed that means 95% of the current oil life remains.

Reset

The system must be reset every time the engine oil is changed to allow correct functionality. The ignition must be switched on with the engine not running. Seek the assistance of your dealer.

For vehicles with MENU button on the turn signal lever:

- With the Remaining Oil Life page displayed, press **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever for several seconds to reset.

For vehicles with steering wheel control switches:

- Calais, Calais Tourer: With the Remaining Oil Life page displayed, press ✓ for several seconds.
- Calais-V, RS-V, VXR, Calais-V Tourer: With the Remaining Oil Life page displayed, press ▷ on the steering wheel to open the sub-menu.

  Select **Reset** and confirm by pressing ✓ for several seconds.

Next Service

When the system has calculated that the engine oil is approaching the end of its life, Change Engine Oil Soon appears in the Driver Information Centre. Have the engine oil and filter changed within one week or 1000 km (whichever occurs first).

It is possible that if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may not indicate an oil change is necessary for a longer period than that shown in the Maintenance schedule. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed in accordance with the Maintenance schedule outlined in the Service & Warranty Booklet.

Turn Signal

⇦⇨ flashes green.

A turn signal or the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Rapid flashing: Failure of a turn signal bulb or associated fuse, failure of a turn signal light on a trailer.

See *Bulb Replacement* ⇨ *300*, *Fuses* ⇨ *311*, *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *138*.

Seat Belt Reminders

Front Seats

for the driver's seat illuminates or flashes red in the instrument cluster.

for front passenger's seat illuminates or flashes red in the roof console, when the seat is occupied.

- Illuminates: After the ignition has been turned on until the seat belt is fastened.
- Flashes: After having started the engine for a maximum of 100 seconds until the seat belt is fastened.

Rear Seats

LT, RS, Calais Tourer (Police):

illuminates or flashes white or grey in the Driver Information Centre, after having started the engine.

- Illuminates white: Seat belt is unfastened.
- Illuminates grey: Seat belt is fastened.
- Flashes white or grey: Fastened seat belt has been unfastened.

Except LT, RS, Calais Tourer (Police):

illuminates green or grey or flashes yellow in the Driver Information Centre, after having started the engine.

- Illuminates grey: Seat belt is unfastened.
- Illuminates green: Seat belt is fastened.
- Flashes yellow: Fastened seat belt has been unfastened.

See *Three-Point Seat Belt* ⇨ *66*.

Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light

illuminates red.

When the ignition is switched on, the indicator illuminates for approx. four seconds. If it does not illuminate, does not go out after four seconds or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault in the airbag system. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

See *Airbag System* ⇨ *68*.

Charging System Light

illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

If it illuminates when the engine is running, stop and turn the engine off. The vehicle's battery is not charging. Engine cooling may be interrupted and the brake servo unit may cease to be effective.

Seek the assistance of a dealer.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates When the Engine is Running

A fault has been detected in the emission control system. The permitted emission limits may be exceeded.

On diesel engines, the cleaning process for the diesel particle filter might not be possible. Seek the assistance of a dealer immediately.

Flashes When the Engine is Running

A fault that could lead to catalytic converter damage has been detected. Ease up on the accelerator until the flashing stops. Seek the assistance of a dealer immediately.

Caution

If the vehicle is driven while this light is on, the emission controls might not operate correctly, the vehicle's fuel economy may increase, and the engine might not run smoothly. This may lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to illuminate. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Brake System Warning Light

illuminates red.

The brake fluid level is too low.

⚠ Warning

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

Electric Parking Brake Light

Ⓟ illuminates or flashes red.

Illuminates

The electric parking brake is applied.

Flashes

The electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. Press the brake pedal and attempt to reset the system by first releasing then applying the electric parking brake.

If Ⓟ keeps flashing, do not drive and seek the assistance of a dealer.

See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *224*.

Service Electric Parking Brake Light

(P) illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

The electric parking brake is operating with degraded performance.

Flashes

The electric parking brake is in service mode. Stop the vehicle, apply and release the electric parking brake to reset.

See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *224*.

⚠ Warning

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately. Avoid parking on inclines until the cause of the fault has been rectified.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

(ABS) illuminates yellow.

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The system is ready for operation when the control indicator extinguishes.

If (ABS) does not go out after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The brake system remains operational but without ABS regulation.

See *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ *223*.

Gear Shifting Light

▲ or ▼ with the number of a higher or lower gear is indicated when shifting up or down is recommended to save fuel.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light

illuminates green or yellow, or flashes yellow.

Illuminates Green

The system is switched on and ready to operate.

Illuminates Yellow

The system is approaching a detected lane marking without the turn signal being used in that direction.

Flashes Yellow

The system recognises that the vehicle has departed significantly from the lane.

See *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *268*.

Vehicle Ahead Indicator

illuminates green or yellow.

Illuminates Green

A vehicle ahead is detected in the same lane.

Illuminates Yellow

The distance to a preceding moving vehicle has become too small, or when approaching another vehicle too rapidly.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *256*, *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *249*.

Pedestrian Ahead Indicator

illuminates yellow.

A pedestrian is detected ahead.

Follow Distance Indicator Light

indicates the timing sensitivity for the Following Distance alert setting for the Forward Collision alert.

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System ⇨ *256*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light

OFF illuminates yellow.

The system is deactivated.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

A fault in the system is detected. Continued driving is possible. However, driving stability may deteriorate, depending on the road surface conditions. Have the cause of the fault remedied by a dealer.

Flashes

The system is actively engaged. Engine output may be reduced and the vehicle may be braked automatically to a small degree.

See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ *227*, *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ *226*.

Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light

illuminates yellow.

The system is deactivated.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light

illuminates red.

If this illuminates when the engine is running, stop and switch the engine off.

Note

If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, idle the engine and check the coolant level. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *296*.

Pre-Heat Light

illuminates yellow.

Preheating of the diesel engine is activated. Only activates when outside temperature is low. Start the engine when the indicator extinguishes.

Engine Oil Pressure Light

illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is turned on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates When the Engine is Running

Caution
Engine damage may result if you keep driving. Do not run the engine. If the oil level is normal, have the system checked by your dealer.

If illuminates while driving, do the following.

1. Move out of the flow of traffic as quickly as possible without impeding other vehicles and stop the vehicle in a safe location.
2. Turn the ignition off.
3. Check the engine oil level. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *291*.

   If required, seek the assistance of a dealer.

Low Fuel Warning Light

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

The fuel level in the fuel tank is low. Refill as soon as possible.

Flashes

Fuel very low. Refuel immediately. Never run the tank dry.

See *Filling the Tank* ⇨ *274*, *Diesel Fuel System Bleeding* ⇨ *299*.

AdBlue Warning Light

flashes yellow.

AdBlue level is low. Refill AdBlue soon to avoid the system preventing the engine from starting.

See *AdBlue (Diesel)* ⇨ *214*.

Immobiliser Light

flashes yellow.

There is a fault in the immobiliser system. The engine cannot be started.

See *Immobiliser* ⇨ *40*.

High-Beam On Light

illuminates blue.

Illuminates when high beam is on or during a headlight flash.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ *133*.

High Beam Assist

illuminates green.

The high beam assist is activated.

See *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)* ⇨ *134*.

Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

A fault is detected in the system. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

Flashes

The system is switched to symmetrical low beam. The indicator flashes for approx. four seconds after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for symmetrical headlights.

See *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)* ⇨ *134*.

Front Fog Lamp Light

illuminates green.

The front fog lamps are on.

See *Front Fog Lamps* ⇨ *138*.

Rear Fog Light

illuminates yellow.

The rear fog lamp is on.

See *Rear Fog Lights* ⇨ *139*.

Lamps On Reminder

illuminates green.

The exterior lights are on.

See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *132*.

Cruise Control Light

illuminates white or green.

Illuminates White

The system is on.

Illuminates Green

Cruise control is active. The set speed is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

See *Cruise Control* ⇨ *245*.

Adaptive Cruise Control

illuminates in the Driver Information Centre.

Illuminates White

The system is on.

Illuminates Green

Adaptive cruise control is active.

See *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *249*.

Door Ajar Light

illuminates red.

A door or the tailgate is open.

Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC)

The Driver Information Centre (DIC) is located in the instrument cluster.

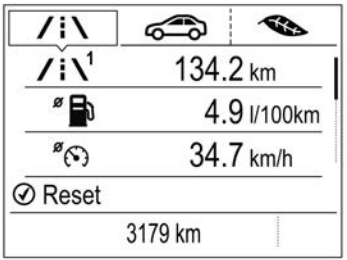
Three DICs are available depending on the vehicle model. The following functions may be available:

- Odometer and trip odometer
- Vehicle information and settings
- Trip/fuel information
- Driving economy information
- Driver assistance alerts
- Warning messages
- Audio and infotainment information
- Phone information
- Navigation information

Note

The following describes possible options. Some may not be available in your vehicle.

LT, RS, Calais Tourer (Police)



Main menu symbols are indicated in the top line of the display:

: Trip/fuel information

: Vehicle information

: ECO information

Some of the displayed functions may differ when the vehicle is being driven or at a standstill. Some functions are only available when the vehicle is being driven.

Selecting Menus and Functions

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the turn signal lever.

Press **MENU** to switch between the main menus or to return from a sub-page to the next higher menu level.

Turn the adjuster wheel to select a sub-page of the main menu or to set a numeric value.

Press **SET/CLR** to select and confirm a function.

Vehicle and service messages are popped-up in the DIC as required. Confirm messages by pressing **SET/CLR**. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *127*.

Trip/fuel Information Menu (／⋮＼) Items

Digital Speed : Digital display of the current vehicle speed in kilometres per hour.

Trip (1 or 2) : Trip odometer: Displays the current distance since last reset. The trip odometer counts up to a distance of 9,999 km then restarts at 0.

Average fuel consumption: Displays average consumption since last reset. The measurement can be reset at any time and starts with a default value.

Average speed: Displays average speed since last reset. The measurement can be reset at any time.

To reset, press **SET/CLR** for a few seconds.

Fuel : Instantaneous fuel consumption: Displays the current instantaneous consumption. This value will constantly change depending on driving conditions.

Fuel range: The range to empty is calculated from current fuel tank level and current fuel consumption. The display shows average values and may change depending on driving conditions. After refuelling, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay.

Average Fuel Consumption : Displays average consumption since last reset. The measurement can be reset at any time and starts with a default value.

To reset press **SET/CLR** for a few seconds.

Timer : To start or stop press **SET/CLR**. To reset press **SET/CLR** for a few seconds.

Vehicle Information Menu (🚗) Items

Remaining Oil Life : Indicates an estimate of the engine oil's useful life. Remaining oil life duration is indicated as a percentage, so if 100% is displayed that means 100% of the current oil life remains. See *Service Display* ⇨ *108*.

Following Distance : Displays the distance in seconds to a preceding moving vehicle. See *Following Distance Indication System* ⇨ *258*.

AdBlue Range : The distance to empty is calculated from the current AdBlue tank level and consumption. The display shows average values and may change depending on driving conditions. See *AdBlue* **u** *214.*

AdBlue Level : Displays the amount of AdBlue within the AdBlue tank.

Speed Warning : The speed warning display allows you to set a speed that you do not want to exceed.

To set the speed warning, press **SET/CLR** while the page is displayed. When set to On, the set speed can be adjusted by turning the adjuster wheel. Press **SET/CLR** to select.

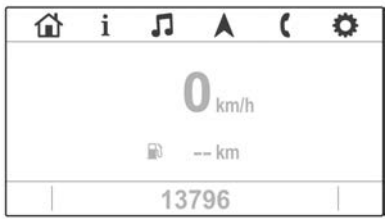
ECO Information Menu (🍃) Items

Fuel Economy : Displays instantaneous, average and best fuel consumption over a specified distance (last 50, 100 or 500 km). To change the distance press **SET/CLR**.

Economy Trend : Displays the average consumption usage over a distance of 50 km. Filled segments display the consumption in 5 km steps and shows the effect of topography and driving behaviour on fuel consumption.

Economy (ECO) Index : The current fuel consumption is indicated in an economic scale. For economical driving, adapt driving style to keep the filled segments within the ECO area. The more segments filled, the higher the fuel consumption. The average consumption value is indicated simultaneously.

Calais, Calais Tourer



Main menus are:

⌂ : Home

i : Information

♫ : Audio

➤ : Navigation

✆ : Phone

⚙ : Options

Some of the displayed functions may differ when the vehicle is being driven or at a standstill. Some functions are only active when the vehicle is being driven.

Selecting Menus and Functions

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the right-hand side of the steering wheel.

Press ◁ or ▷ to choose the main pages indicated in the top line of the display:

Once a main page is selected, press ▽ or △ to select sub-pages.

If available, press ▷ to open an options menu of the selected sub-page.

Press ▽ or △ to select menu items or to set a numeric value, as required. Press ✓ to confirm.

Once a page is selected, this selection remains stored until another page is selected.

Vehicle and service messages are popped-up in the DIC as required. Confirm messages by pressing ✓. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *127*.

Home Page Items

The following is a list of all possible items that can be displayed on the Home page. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle.

Some items may not be turned on by default but can be turned on from the Options page. See “Options Page Items” further in this section.

Digital Speed : Digital display of the current vehicle speed in kilometres per hour.

Time : Displays the current time in the top line of the DIC. To set the time see *Settings* ⇨ *182*.

Fuel Range : Displays the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

Information Page Items

The following is a list of all possible items that can be displayed on the Information page. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle.

Some items may not be turned on by default but can be turned on from the Options page. See “Options Page Items” further in this section.

Digital Speed : Digital display of the current vehicle speed in kilometres per hour.

Trip 1 or Trip 2, Average Fuel Economy, Average Speed : Displays the distance travelled in kilometres (km) since this page was reset.

The Average Fuel Economy displays the approximate average litres per 100 kilometres (L/100 km). This number is calculated based on the number of L/100 km recorded since the last time this page was reset. This number reflects only the approximate average fuel economy the vehicle has right now, and will change as driving conditions change.

The Average Speed displays the average speed of the vehicle in kilometres per hour (km/h). This average is calculated based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset of this value.

To reset, press ▷.

Fuel Information : Fuel Range: Displays the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling. LOW will be displayed when the vehicle is low on fuel. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

Instant: Displays the current fuel economy in litres per 100 km (L/100 km). This number reflects only the approximate fuel economy the vehicle has right now and changes frequently as driving conditions change. When the vehicle is at idle, "-,-" is displayed.

Oil Life : Indicates an estimate of the engine oil's useful life. Remaining oil life duration is indicated as a percentage, so if 100% is displayed that means 100% of the current oil life remains. See *Service Display ⇨ 108*.

Fuel Economy : Displays the approximate fuel economy as a number and bar graph. Displayed above the bar graph is a running average of fuel economy for the most recently travelled selected distance. Displayed below the bar graph is the best average fuel economy that has been achieved for the selected distance. The selected distance is displayed at the top of the page.

Press the thumbwheel to change the distance or Reset Best Score. After reset, the Best value displays "-,-" until the selected distance has been travelled.

The display provides information on how current driving behavior affects the running average and how well recent driving compares to the best that has been achieved for the selected distance.

Timer : To start the timer, press ✓ while this display is active. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset. To stop the timer, press ✓ and select Stop Timer. To reset the timer to zero, press ✓ and select Reset, press ▷ to select Yes and press the thumbwheel.

Following Distance : The following-distance to a moving vehicle ahead in your path is indicated in following-time in seconds. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System ⇨ 256*.

Driver Assistance : Displays information for the Lane Keep Assist (LKA) and Forward Collision Alert systems.

Economy Trend : Displays history of the Average Fuel Economy from the last 50 km. Each bar represents about 5 km of driving. During driving the bars will shift to always reflect the most recent distance on the right side. Press and hold ✓ to clear the graph or press ▷ to reset through the menu.

Economy (ECO) Index : The current fuel consumption is indicated in an economic scale. For economical driving, adapt driving style to keep the filled segments within the ECO area. The more segments filled, the higher the fuel consumption. The average consumption value is indicated simultaneously.

AdBlue Level : Displays the amount of AdBlue within the AdBlue tank.

Audio Page Items

Enables browsing for music, selecting from favourites or changing the audio source. Press ▷ to display the audio menu.

Navigation Page Items

Displays location or route guidance. Press ▷ to display the navigation menu.

Phone Page Items

Enables managing and performing phone calls, scrolling through contacts or operating a connected hands free mobile phone.

Options Page Items

Info Page Options : Press ▷ to open a list of items that can be displayed or turned off in the Information page.

1. Press ▽ or △ to scroll the items.
2. Press ✓ while an item is highlighted to select or deselect that item. When an item is selected, a check-mark will appear next to it.

Home Page Options : Press ✓ to open a list of items that can be displayed or turned off in the Home page.

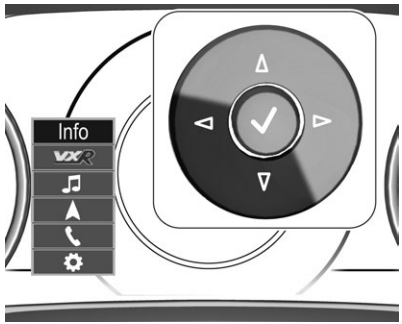
1. Press ▽ or △ to scroll the items.
2. Press ✓ while an item is highlighted to select or deselect that item. When an item is selected, a check-mark will appear next to it.

Speed Warning : This display is used to set the vehicle speed at which the speed warning chime sounds and an alert is displayed.

Press ✓ to turn on and then press ▽ or △ to select the desired speed. Press ✓ to set or cancel.

Software Information : Displays software information and licence agreements.

Calais-V, RS-V, VXR, Calais-V Tourer



Press ◁ to choose the main pages indicated in the left-side of the display:

i : Info (Information)

VXR : Performance

♫ : Audio

▲ : Nav (Navigation)

✆ : Phone

⚙ : Options

Note
Some of the displayed functions may differ when the vehicle is being driven or at a standstill.

Selecting Menus and Functions

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the right-hand side of the steering wheel.

Press ◁ to open the main pages menu.

Select a main page with ▽ or △. Press ✓ to confirm.

Once a main page is selected, press ▽ or △ to select sub-pages.

If available, press ▷ to open an options menu of the selected sub-page.

Press ▽ or △ to select menu items or to set a numeric value, as required. Press ✓ to confirm.

Once a page is selected, this selection remains stored until another page is selected.

Vehicle and service messages are popped up in the Driver Information Centre as required. Confirm messages by pressing ✓. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *127*.

Information Page Items

The following is a list of possible items that can be displayed on the Information page. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle.

Some items may not be turned on by default but can be turned on from the Options page. See “Options Page Items” further in this section.

Digital Speed : (Sport mode display) Digital display of the current vehicle speed in kilometres per hour.

Trip A or Trip B, Average Fuel Economy, Average Speed : Displays the distance travelled in kilometres (km) since this page was reset.

The Average Fuel Economy displays the approximate average litres per 100 kilometres (L/100 km). This number is calculated based on the number of L/100 km recorded since the last time this page was reset. This number reflects only the approximate average fuel economy the vehicle has right now, and will change as driving conditions change.

The Average Speed displays the average speed of the vehicle in kilometres per hour (km/h). This average is calculated based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset of this value.

To reset, press ▷ and select Reset All in the menu.

Fuel Range and Instantaneous Fuel Economy : Displays the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling. LOW will be displayed when the vehicle is low on fuel. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

The Instantaneous Fuel Economy displays the current fuel economy in litres per 100 kilometres (L/100 km). This number reflects only the approximate fuel economy that the vehicle has right now and changes frequently as driving conditions change. When the vehicle is at idle, fuel usage in Litres per Hour (L/Hr) is displayed.

Oil Life : Indicates an estimate of the engine oil's useful life. Remaining oil life duration is indicated as a percentage, so if 100% is displayed that means 100% of the current oil life remains. See *Service Display* ⇨ *108*.

Fuel Economy : Displays the average fuel economy and best fuel economy over the selected distance as a bar graph.

Press ▷ to change the selected distance or to reset the best fuel economy and average fuel economy.

Timer : To start the timer, press ▷ while this display is active and select Start Timer. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset. To stop the timer, press ▷ while this display is active and the timer is running. Select Stop Timer. To reset the timer to zero, press ▷ and select Reset Timer.

Driver Assistance : Displays information for the Lane Keep Assist (LKA) and Forward Collision Alert systems.

Following Distance : The following-distance to a moving vehicle ahead in your path is indicated in following-time in seconds. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *256*.

Economy Trend : Displays history of the Average Fuel Economy from the last 50 km. Each bar represents about 5 km of driving. During driving the bars will shift to always reflect the most recent distance on the right side. Press ▷ to select Reset.

Economy (ECO) Index : The current fuel consumption is indicated in an economic scale. For economical driving, adapt driving style to keep the filled segments within the ECO area. The more segments filled, the higher the fuel consumption. The average consumption value is indicated simultaneously.

VXR Performance Page Items

The following list contains all possible Menu pages.

- G-force.
- Friction bubble.
- Performance timer.
- Lap timer.

- Oil pressure.
- Battery voltage.

Press ▷ to select further options for some items.

Audio Page Items

Enables browsing for music, selecting from favourites or changing the audio source. Press ▷ to display the audio menu.

Navigation Page Items

Displays location or route guidance. Press ▷ to display the navigation menu.

Phone Page Items

Enables managing and performing phone calls, scrolling through contacts or operating a connected hands free mobile phone.

Options Page Items

Display Theme : There are two instrument cluster display configurations to choose from. Press ▷ to select Sport or Touring.

Info Page Options : Press ▷ to open a list of items that can be displayed or turned off in the Information page.

1. Press ▽ or △ to scroll the items.
2. Press ✓ while an item is highlighted to select or deselect that item. When an item is selected, a check-mark will appear next to it.

Speed Warning : This display is used to set the vehicle speed at which the speed warning chime sounds and an alert is displayed. Press ▷ to enable or disable. Once enabled, select Set Speed and adjust by pressing ▽ or △. Press ✓ to confirm.

Pocket Gauges : Allows customisation of the left and right-hand minor gauges.

Press ▷ and select Edit Gauges. The left-hand gauge is highlighted. Press ▽ or △ to scroll through the available options. Press ▷ to change to the right-hand gauge. Press ✓ to confirm.

Available options may include: IFE-AFE (Instantaneous Fuel Economy-Average Fuel Economy), Fuel Range, Blank, Battery Voltage.

Software Information : Displays software information and licence agreements.

Head-Up Display : Allows rotation of the head-up display. See *Head-Up Display (HUD)* ⇨ *124*.

Head-Up Display (HUD)

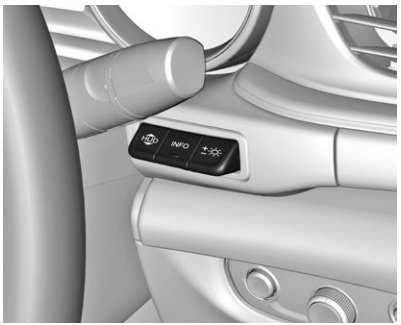
The vehicle may have a Head-Up Display (HUD) which projects vehicle operation information onto the windscreen.

The image is projected from a lens in the instrument panel onto the windscreen directly ahead in the driver's view. The image appears focused out toward the front of the vehicle.

The head-up display information may indicate:

- General driving information.
- Alerts from driver assistance systems.

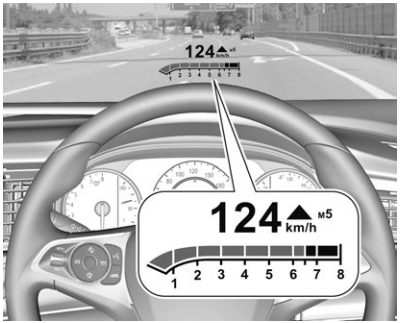
- Automatic transmission shift lever position.
- Gear shift indication.
- Audio and phone information.
- Turn-by-turn navigation information.



Three switches above the light control switch operate the head-up display.

Display Views

Different views are selectable in head-up display by pressing the the INFO button. Each press will change the display view.



Speed View

Indicates:

- **Speedometer** : Digital indication of speed.

Performance View

Indicates:

- **Speedometer** : Digital indication of speed.
- **Tachometer** : Engine speed in revolutions per minute.
- **Automatic transmission** : Shift lever position.
- **Manual mode transmission** : Gear shift indication.
- **Auto stop** indication.

Audio View

Indicates:

- **Speedometer** : Digital indication of speed.
- **Audio playing** information.

Navigation View

Indicates:

- **Speedometer** : Digital indication of speed.
- **Navigation** : Turn-by-turn information.

Active Safety Control Indicators

On all views, control indicators of following Driver assistance systems are indicated in the top line of the display:

- **Vehicle detected ahead** : Vehicle recognition.
- **Lane keep assist** : Status and warning.
- **Adaptive cruise control** : set speed and status.

- **Pedestrian detected ahead** : pedestrian recognition.

Pop-up Alerts

The following list contains only an extract of possible alerts. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle, others can appear depending on your vehicle's configuration.

Alerts pop up on each page as required.

- Pedestrian protection alert.
- Forward collision alert.
- Up-/downshift alert.
- Incoming call.

Alerts with lower priority can be reset by pressing ✓, high priority alerts appear as long as the danger remains. System messages or vehicle warnings may require immediate action. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

Image Position Adjustment

1. Adjust the driver's seat.
2. Start the engine.
3. Press down or lift up the HUD button to centre the image. It can only be adjusted up and down, not side to side.

⚠ Warning

If the HUD image is too bright or too high in your field of view, it may take you more time to see things you need to see when it is dark outside. Be sure to keep the HUD image dim and placed low in your field of view.

Image Rotation Adjustment

In the Driver Information Centre (DIC), select the Options page. Press ▽ to select the Head-Up Display sub-page.

Press ▷ on the steering wheel to open adjustment menu. Press ▽ or △ to turn the HUD projection clockwise or anticlockwise. Press ◁ when completed.

Brightness Adjustment

The head-up display image will automatically dim and brighten to compensate for outside lighting.

Brightness can also be adjusted manually as desired:

- Lift up and hold ±☼ to brighten the display.
- Press down and hold ±☼ to dim the display.

The image can temporarily lighten depending on angle and position of sunlight.

Switching Off

Hold down ±☼ to turn the head-up display off. Lift up to turn back on.

Head-up Display Care

Clean the inside of the windscreen as required to remove any dirt or film that could reduce the sharpness or clarity of the head-up image.

Clean the head-up display lens in the instrument panel with a soft cloth sprayed with glass cleaner. Wipe the lens gently, then dry it.

System Limitations

The head-up display may not operate correctly when:

- The lens in the instrument panel is covered by objects, or the windscreen and lens are not clean.
- The display brightness is too dim or bright.
- The image is not adjusted to the correct height.
- The driver is wearing polarised sunglasses.

If the head-up image is not functioning for other reasons, contact a dealer. The windscreen is part of the head-up display system. See *Windows* ⇨ *43*.

Vehicle Messages

Messages are indicated in the Driver Information Centre, in some cases together with a warning and signal buzzer.

On vehicles with a MENU button in the turn signal lever, press **SET/ CLR** on the turn signal lever to confirm a message.

On vehicles with steering wheel controls, press ✓ to confirm a message.

Vehicle and Service Messages

The vehicle messages are displayed as text. Follow the instructions given in the messages.

Messages in the Infotainment Display

Some important messages may appear additionally in the infotainment system display. Press the multifunction knob to confirm a message. Some messages only pop up for a few seconds.

Warning Chimes

When Starting the Engine or Whilst Driving

Only one warning will sound at a time. The warning for a not-fastened seat belt has priority over any other warning. Depending on vehicle model, warnings may sound:

- If a seat belt is not fastened.
- If a door or the tailgate is not fully closed when starting off.
- If a certain speed is exceeded with the parking brake applied.
- If the adaptive cruise control deactivates automatically.
- If approaching a vehicle ahead too closely.
- If approaching a pedestrian ahead too closely.
- If a programmed speed or speed limit is exceeded.
- If a warning message appears in the Driver Information Centre.
- If the RKE transmitter is not in the passenger compartment.
- If the parking assist detects an object.
- If an unintended lane change occurs.
- If the diesel particulate filter has reached its maximum filling level.

When the Vehicle is Parked and/or the Driver's Door is Opened

- With exterior lights on.

During an Autostop

- If the driver's door is opened.
- If any condition for an Autostop is not fulfilled.

Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

When the vehicle battery voltage is running low, a warning message will appear in the Driver Information Centre.

1. Switch off any electricity consumers that are not required for a safe ride such as seat heating, heated rear window or other power consumers.
2. Charge the vehicle battery by driving continuously for a while or by using a charging device.

The warning message will disappear after the engine has been started twice without a voltage drop. If the vehicle battery cannot be recharged, have the cause of the fault remedied by a dealer.

Vehicle Personalisation

The behaviour of some vehicle functions can be personalised by changing settings in the Infotainment system.

Some of the personal settings for different drivers can be memorised individually for each vehicle key.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *22*.

Note

- Depending on vehicle model and options, some functions described below may not be available.
- Some functions are only displayed or active when the engine is running.

Press ⌂, select **SETTINGS** and then the **Vehicle** tab on the touch-screen.

Note

For a description of other Settings menu items see *Settings* ⇨ *182*.

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed.

Sport Mode Customisation

- **Sport Steering** : Adjusts the steering feel while in Sport mode.
- **Sport Suspension** : Optimises vehicle handling while in Sport mode.
- **Sport AWD** : Enables all wheel drive control to optimise vehicle handling while in Sport mode.
- **Sport Adaptive Cruise Control** : Enables enhanced dynamic behaviour of the adaptive cruise control while in Sport mode.

For further information see *Interactive Drive Control System* ⇨ *228*.

Auto Mode Customisation

- **Auto Mode Customisation** : Automatically adjusts the driving mode based on your driving style.

For further information see *Interactive Drive Control System* ⇨ *228*.

Climate and Air Quality

- **Auto Fan Speed** : Modifies the cabin airflow level of the climate control system in automatic mode.
- **Auto Heated Seats** : Automatically activates the seat heating.

- **Auto Demist** : Supports windscreen dehumidification by automatically selecting the necessary settings and automatic air conditioning mode.
- **Auto Rear Demist** : Automatically activates the heated rear window based on temperature and humidity conditions.

Collision / Detection Systems

- **Forward Collision System** : Activates or deactivates and changes the settings of the forward collision alert.
- **Front Pedestrian Detection** : Activates or deactivates and changes the settings of the front pedestrian detection.
- **Adaptive Cruise Go Notifier** : Activates or deactivates the reminder function of the adaptive cruise control.
- **Lane Change Alert** : Activates or deactivates lane change alert.
- **Park Assist** : Activates or deactivates the ultrasonic parking assist. Activation is selectable with or without a towbar.
- **Rear Camera Park Assist Symbols** : Activates or deactivates the park assist symbols when the rear vision camera is displayed.
- **Rear Cross Traffic Alert** : Activates or deactivates rear cross traffic alert.

Comfort and Convenience

- **Auto Memory Recall** : Activates or deactivates the memorised feature for power seat adjustment.
- **Easy Exit Driver Seat** : Activates or deactivates power seat easy exit function.
- **Chime Volume** : Changes the volume of warning chimes such as door ajar or headlamps left on.
- **Hands-free Tailgate Control** : Activates or deactivates and changes the settings of the hands-free power tailgate.
- **Reverse Tilt Mirror** : Activates or deactivates and changes the exterior mirror parking assist function.
- **Auto Mirror Folding** : Activates or deactivates exterior mirror folding with the RKE transmitter.
- **Personalisation by Driver** : Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.
- **Rainsense Wipers** : Activates or deactivates automatic wiping with the rain sensor.
- **Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear** : Activates or deactivates automatic operation of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.
- **Extended Hill Start Assist** : Changes the setting between Extended Hold or Standard Hold to prevent the vehicle rolling backwards on a steep hill.

Lighting

- **Vehicle Locator Lights** : Activates or deactivates the entry lighting.

- **Exit Lighting** : Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of exit lighting.
- **Left or Right Hand Traffic** : Changes between lighting for left- or right-hand traffic.
- **Adaptive Forward Lighting** : Changes the function settings of the LED headlights.

Power Door Locks

- **Open Door Anti-Lock Out** : Activates or deactivates the door locking function while a door is open.
- **Auto Door Lock** : Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function when shifting out of P (Park).

Remote Lock, Unlock and Start

- **Remote Unlock Light Feedback** : Activates or deactivates exterior light flashing whilst unlocking remotely.
- **Remote Lock Feedback** : Changes what kind of feedback is given when locking the vehicle remotely.
- **Remote Door Unlock** : Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking with the RKE transmitter.
- **Relock Doors Unlocked Remotely** : Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.
- **Remote Start Auto Heat Seats** : Activates or deactivates automatic seat heating during a remote vehicle start.
- **Remote Window Operation** : Activates or deactivates open/closing of the power windows, and if fitted, closing of the sunroof with the RKE transmitter.
- **Passive Door Unlock** : Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking with the keyless entry function.
- **Passive Door Lock** : Activates or deactivates the passive locking function. This feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if all doors have been closed and a RKE transmitter has been removed from the vehicle.
- **Remote Left in Vehicle Alert** : Activates or deactivates the warning chime when the RKE transmitter remains in the vehicle.

Lighting

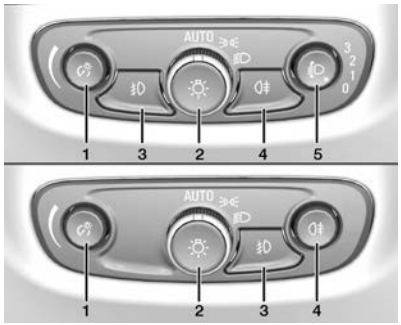
Exterior Lighting
Exterior Lamp Controls 132
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 133
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 133
Automatic Headlamp System 134
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) 134
Headlamp Leveling Control . . . 137
Hazard Warning Flashers 138
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 138
Front Fog Lamps 138
Rear Fog Lights 139
Reverse Lamps 139
Misted Light Covers 139

Interior Lighting
Instrument Panel Illumination Control 139
Interior Lamps 140
Reading Lamps 141
Sun Visor Lamps 141

Lighting Features
Centre Console Lighting 141
Entry Lighting 141
Exit Lighting 142
Battery Power Protection 142

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls



Several variations of exterior lamp control switches are available depending on vehicle model. Shown are the two main variations illustrating the placement of the available functions. Your vehicle may not have all of these.

1. Instrument panel illumination. See *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *139*.

2. Light control:
   - **AUTO** : Automatic light control; switches automatically between daytime running lights and headlamps. See *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ *134*.
   - : Park, tail and rear number plate lamps.
   - : Headlamps and all park lamps.
3. Front fog lamps . See *Front Fog Lamps* ⇨ *138*.
4. Rear fog lamps . See *Rear Fog Lights* ⇨ *139*.
5. Headlamp beam level (halogen headlamps) . See *Headlamp Leveling Control* ⇨ *137*.

Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer

Push the turn signal lever to change from low to high beam.

Pull the lever to deactivate high beam.

High beam is indicated by on the instrument cluster.

Headlamp Flash

To activate the headlamp flash, pull the turn signal lever and release. The headlamps will remain on for as long as the lever is pulled.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) increase visibility of the vehicle during daylight.

When the automatic light control switch is in the **AUTO** position, the DRL are switched on automatically during the daytime when the engine

is running. The system switches between daytime running lamps and headlamps automatically, depending on the lighting conditions.

Automatic Headlamp System

When the automatic light control function is in the **AUTO** position and the engine is running, the system switches between daytime running lamps and headlamps automatically. Operation depends on the external lighting conditions and information from the wiper system.

Automatic Headlamp Activation

During poor lighting conditions, the headlamps are switched on. Additionally, the headlights are switched on if the windscreen wipers have been activated for several wipes.

A sensor mounted in the front-centre of the instrument panel detects ambient lighting conditions. Do not cover the sensor, otherwise the headlamps may not operate correctly.

⚠ Warning

The automatic headlamp sensor cannot replace the driver's personal judgement of the prevailing light conditions. For example, the sensor is unable to detect foggy conditions.

In situations such as this, set the lamp switch to ≡D, otherwise your safety and that of other road users could be endangered.

Tunnel Detection

When a tunnel is entered, the headlamps are switched on immediately until lighting conditions return to normal.

Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)

The vehicle may have an Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) system.

The AFL system features headlamps that contain a variety of LEDs which enable the control of different lighting programs.

Light distribution and intensity of the light are variably activated depending on lighting conditions and road type. The vehicle adapts the headlamps automatically to the current diving situation to enable optimal light performance for the driver.

Some functions of the AFL system can be deactivated or activated in the vehicle personalisation menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

The following lighting functions are available with the light control switch in the AUTO or position.

Town Light

Activated automatically at a speed up to approx. 55 km/h and in situations with low exterior ambient light.

The light is wide and symmetrical. The special beam pattern is designed to avoid glare for other road users.

Country Light

Activated automatically at a speed above approx. 55 km/h when driving in rural areas.

The illumination of the current lane and the side of the road is improved, reducing glare to oncoming and preceding vehicles.

Curve Light

Particular LEDs, based on steering angle and speed, are additionally activated to improve lighting in curves.

This function is activated at speeds from 40 km/h to 70 km/h and reacts to steering angle.

Corner Light

When turning a corner, depending on the steering angle and turn signal lamp direction, particular LEDs are activated which illuminate the direction of travel.

It is activated up to a speed of 40 km/h.

Reverse Parking Function

To assist the driver's orientation when parking, both corner lamps and reverse lamps illuminate when the headlamps are on and reverse gear is engaged.

They remain illuminated for a short time after disengaging reverse gear or until driving faster than 7 km/h in a forward gear.

High Beam Assist

This feature allows the high beam to function as the main driving light at night.

The camera in the windscreen detects the lights of oncoming or preceding vehicles. Each LED in the headlamps on the right or left side can be activated or faded out according to the traffic situation. This gives the best light distribution without glare for other road users.

Once activated, high beam assist remains active and switches high beam on and off depending on surrounding conditions.

The current setting of the high beam assist will remain after the ignition is switched on again.

High beam assist includes a special freeway mode.

When driving faster than 115 km/h on freeways, the light beam becomes smaller to avoid glare to oncoming traffic. When following vehicles ahead or passing, mirror glare for these vehicles is reduced.

⚠ Warning

It is the responsibility of the driver to always comply with local posted speed limits.

Activation

Activate high beam assist by pressing ≣Ⓐ once.

High beam is switched on automatically at a speed above 50 km/h. High beam is switched off at a speed below 35 km/h, but high beam assist remains active.

The green indicator ≣Ⓐ illuminates continuously in the instrument cluster when high beam assist is activated. The blue indicator ≣● illuminates when high beam is on.

Pushing the turn signal indicator lever once switches on manual high beam without high beam assist.

High beam assist switches automatically to low beam when:

- Driving in urban areas.
- The camera detects heavy fog.
- Front fog lamps are switched on.

If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

Deactivation

If high beam assist is active and high beam is on, press ≣Ⓐ once or pull indicator lever once to deactivate high beam assist.

If high beam assist is active and high beam is off, press ≣Ⓐ once to deactivate high beam assist.

Pushing the turn signal indicator lever to activate manual high beam will also deactivate high beam assist.

Headlamp Flash in Conjunction with High Beam Assist

Headlamp flash by pulling the turn signal indicator lever once will not deactivate high beam assist when high beam is off.

Headlamp flash by pulling the turn signal indicator lever once deactivates high beam assist when high beam is on.

Dynamic Automatic Headlamp Levelling

To prevent glare to oncoming traffic, headlamp levelling is automatically adjusted based on vehicle inclination information measured by the front and rear axle, acceleration or deceleration and vehicle speed.

Faults

If the system detects a failure in the AFL system, it selects a preset position to avoid glare to oncoming traffic.

A warning is displayed in the driver information centre.

Headlamp Leveling Control

If equipped, the headlamp beam level can be adjusted according to vehicle load and to prevent glare to oncoming drivers.

Push ⥀ and then turn to the desired position.

0 : Front seats occupied.

1 : All seats occupied.

2 : All seats occupied and load compartment laden.

3 : Driver's seat occupied and load compartment laden.

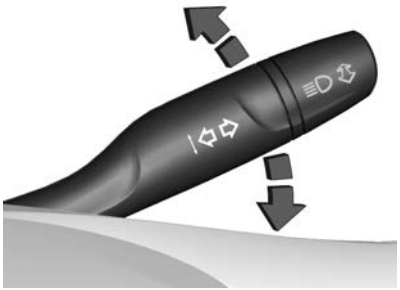
For vehicles with adaptive forward lighting system, refer to Dynamic Automatic Headlight levelling, see *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)* ⇨ *134*.

Hazard Warning Flashers

Operated by pressing ⚠.

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the hazard warning flashers are activated automatically.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Lever up : Left turn signal

Lever down : Right turn signal

A resistance point can be felt when moving the turn signal lever. Constant flashing is activated when the lever is moved beyond the resistance point.

It is deactivated when the steering wheel is turned in the opposite direction, or the lever is manually returned to the neutral position.

Temporary flashing is activated by holding the lever just before the resistance point. The turn signal lights will flash until the lever is released.

To activate three flashes automatically, tap the lever briefly without passing the resistance point. If a trailer is connected, the turn signal lights flash six times and tone frequency changes.

Front Fog Lamps

Operated by pressing ⇞.

When the light control switch is in the AUTO position, turning on the front fog lamps will turn the headlamps on automatically.

The front fog lamps should only be used in poor visibility conditions such as fog, snow or heavy rain.

Rear Fog Lights

The vehicle has one rear fog lamp.

Operated by pressing .

When the light control switch is in the AUTO position, turning on the rear fog lamp will turn the headlamps on automatically.

When the light control switch is in the position, the rear fog lamp can only be turned on with the front fog lamps.

The rear fog lamp should only be used in poor visibility conditions such as fog, snow or heavy rain.

Reverse Lamps

The reverse lamps Illuminate when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

Misted Light Covers

The inside of a light housing may mist-up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself. To help, switch on the headlights.

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control

Brightness of the following lights can be adjusted.

They illuminate when the light control switch is in the AUTO position and the light sensor detects night conditions, or in or positions.

- Instrument panel illumination
- Infotainment display

- Illuminated switches and operation elements

Push and then turn until the desired brightness is obtained.

Interior Lamps

During entry and exit of the vehicle, the front and rear courtesy lights automatically turn on and then off after a delay.

Note

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the courtesy lights are turned on automatically.

Front Courtesy Light

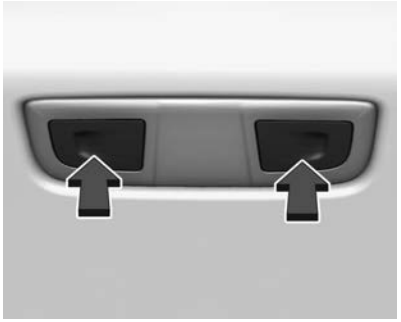
ON/OFF : Press to turn the interior lights on or off manually.

OFF : Press to deactivate the interior lights. Deactivation is indicated by an LED in the switch.

Rear Courtesy Lights

Illuminate in conjunction with the front courtesy light.

Reading Lamps



The front and rear reading lights are operated by pressing the light.

Sun Visor Lamps

Illuminates when the cover is opened.

Lighting Features

Centre Console Lighting

A spotlight incorporated in the front interior lights illuminates when the headlights are turned on.

Entry Lighting

Depending on vehicle model, the following lights are turned on for a short time when unlocking the vehicle with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter:

- Headlights.
- Puddle lights in both outside mirrors.
- Tail lamps.
- Number plate lights.
- Instrument panel lights.
- Interior lights.

Some functions are only operable when it is dark outside to facilitate locating the vehicle.

The lighting turns off immediately when the ignition is turned on.

This function can be activated or deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

The settings can be saved for the RKE transmitter being used. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *22*.

The following lights will additionally switch on when the driver's door is opened:

- Illumination of some switches.
- Driver information centre.
- Door pocket lights.

Exit Lighting

Depending on vehicle model, the following lights will turn on when the ignition is turned off:

- Interior lights.
- Instrument panel lights.
- Puddle lights in both outside mirrors.

They will switch off automatically after a delay. This function works only in the dark.

Interior lighting is activated if the driver's door is opened during this time.

Path Lighting

Headlights, tail lamps and number plate lights illuminate the surrounding area for an adjustable time after leaving the vehicle.

Activation

Path lighting is activated, when the ignition is turned off and the driver's door is opened.

Path lighting can be activated or deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

The settings can be saved for the RKE transmitter being used. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *22*.

Battery Power Protection

This function guarantees longest vehicle battery life via an alternator with controllable power output and optimised power distribution.

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when driving, the following systems are reduced automatically in two stages and finally switched off:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated mirrors.
- Heated seats.
- Fan.

In the second stage, a message confirming the activation of the vehicle battery discharge protection will be displayed in the driver information centre.

Automatic Lights Off

To prevent discharge of the vehicle's battery when the ignition is off, some interior lights are turned off automatically after a period of time.

Infotainment System

Introduction
Overview 143
Steering Wheel Controls 145
Using the System 147
Software Updates 150

Radio
AM-FM-DAB Radio 150
Radio Data System (RDS) 152
Radio Reception 153
Multi-Band Antenna 154

Audio Players
Avoiding Untrusted Media Devices 154
USB Port 154
Auxiliary Jack 158
Bluetooth Audio 158

Navigation
Using the Navigation System 160
Maps 161
Navigation Symbols 162
Destination 163
Global Positioning System (GPS) 167
Vehicle Positioning 168
Problems with Route Guidance 168
If the System Needs Service 169
Map Data Updates 169
Database Coverage Explanations 169

Voice Recognition
Voice Recognition 170

Phone
Bluetooth 176
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 181

Settings
Settings 182

Trademarks and Licence Agreements
Trademarks and Licence Agreements 188

Introduction

Overview

Read the following pages to become familiar with the infotainment system features.

Note

This section describes all available configurations, therefore some features described may not be fitted to your vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some features when driving. These features may grey out when they are unavailable. Many infotainment features are also available through the instrument cluster and steering wheel controls.

Before driving:

- Become familiar with the system operation and infotainment display and controls.
- Set up the audio by pre-setting favourite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up mobile phones and contacts in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single control or by using a single voice command.

Infotainment System

The infotainment system is controlled by directly using the infotainment display, with the steering wheel controls, voice recognition or with the controls on the instrument panel under the infotainment display. Also see *Using the System* ⇨ *147*, *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *145*, *Voice Recognition* ⇨ *170*.

Control Panel

Two control panels are available depending on model.

⌂ : Press to go to the Home Page. See “Home Page” later in this section.

⏮ : Radio: Press and release to go to the previous station. Press and hold to fast seek the next strongest previous station. See *AM-FM-DAB Radio* ⇨ *150*.

USB/Bluetooth: Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. Press and hold to quickly reverse through a track. Release to return to playing speed. See *USB Port* ⇨ *154* or *Bluetooth Audio* ⇨ *158*.

⏻ : Press to turn the power on.

Press and hold to turn the power off.

Press to mute/unmute the system when on.

Turn to decrease or increase the volume.

When the power is on and the system is not muted, a quick status pane will display when ⏻ is pressed. Pressing ⏻ will mute the system and trigger this pane to show. A long press is required to actually power down the system.

⏭ : Radio: Press and release to go to the next station. Press and hold to fast seek the next track or strongest station.

USB/Bluetooth: Press to seek the next track. Press and hold to fast forward through a track. Release to return to playing speed.
See *USB Port* ⇨ *154* or *Bluetooth Audio* ⇨ *158*.

✆ : Press to access the Phone menu.

⟪ **BACK :** Return to the previous screen or menu.

Home Page

The Home Page is where vehicle application icons are accessed. Some applications may be disabled when the vehicle is moving.

Note
Application icons vary depending on vehicle model and equipment.

Swipe left or right across the screen to access the pages. See "Infotainment Gestures" in *Using the System* ⇨ *147*.

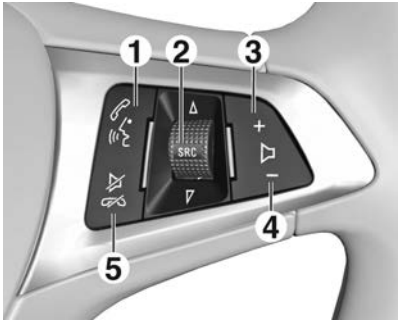
Managing Home Page Icons

The Home page icons can be moved as desired.

1. Touch and hold any of the Home Page icons to enter edit mode.
2. Continue holding the icon and drag it to the desired position.
3. Release your finger to drop the icon in the desired position.
4. To move an application to another page, drag the icon to the edge of the display toward the desired page.
5. Continue dragging and dropping application icons as desired.

Steering Wheel Controls

Depending on vehicle model, the following controls are available on the steering wheel.



1. Call :
   - When there is no connected Bluetooth device on the Infotainment system: Executes the Bluetooth device connection.
   - When there is a connected Bluetooth device on the Infotainment system: Press to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.

     If the connected phone supports Speech Recognition, press and hold to activate the phone's speech recognition mode.
2. SRC (Source):

   Press to change the source, e.g. AM, FM, USB, etc.

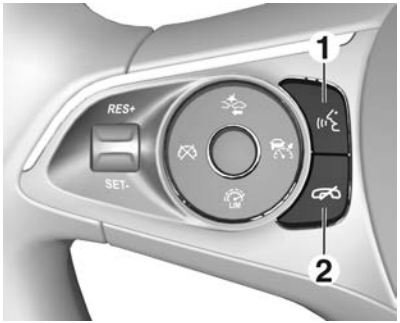
   Rotate (▲ / ▼) to select the next or previous:
   - Radio mode: preset radio station.
   - Audio mode: track / chapter / picture.
   - Phone mode: call list entry when the call list is open.
3. Volume + :

   Press **+** to increase the volume.
4. Volume – :

   Press **-** to decrease the volume.
5. Mute/Hang up :

   Press in any music play mode to turn the mute function on and off.

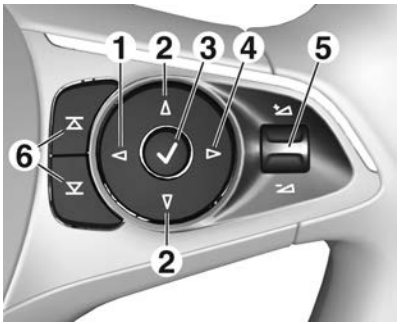
   Press to reject incoming calls, or to finish your current call, or to end speech recognition mode.



1. Call :
   - Press to take a phone call, activate speech recognition or interrupt a voice prompt.
   - When there is a connected Bluetooth device on the Infotainment system: Press to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.

Press and hold to activate the phone's voice pass-thru if supported by the phone.

2. End ✂: Press to end or decline an incoming call, end speech recognition or activate/ deactivate the Mute function.



1. ◁: Press to open the Driver Information Centre (DIC) main menu page.
2. ▽ or △:
   - Press to scroll through the DIC menu items.
   - Press and hold to fast scroll through long lists in the DIC, e.g. contacts.
3. ✓: Confirm a selection of a DIC item.
4. ▷: If available, press to open a sub-page of the selected item in the DIC.
5. ◿ + / –: Press towards + to increase volume or towards – to decrease volume.
6. ⧋ or ⧊:
   - Radio: press to select the next/previous favourite station in the DIC.
   - Media: press to select the next/previous track in the DIC.

Using the System

Audio

Touch the Audio icon to display the active audio source page. Examples of available sources are AM, FM, DAB (if equipped), USB, and Bluetooth.

Phone

Touch the Phone icon to display the phone main page. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *176*.

Nav

If equipped, touch the Nav icon to display the navigation map. See *Using the Navigation System* ⇨ *160*.

Climate

Touch the Climate icon to display the climate setting menu. See *Electronic Climate Control System* ⇨ *196*.

Users

If equipped, touch the Users icon to sign in or create a new user profile and follow the on-screen instructions.

Four user profiles can be active at one time in the vehicle. It may be necessary to remove a profile from the menu before creating or signing into an existing profile. The removed profile can be logged into at a later time. See “Personal” under *Settings* ⇨ *182*.

Settings

Touch the Settings icon to display the Settings menu. See *Settings* ⇨ *182*.

Apple CarPlay

Touch the Apple CarPlay icon to activate Apple CarPlay after a supported device is connected. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *181*.

Android Auto

Touch the Android Auto icon to activate Android Auto after a supported device is connected. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *181*.

Camera

If equipped, touch the Camera icon to access the surround vision system application. See *Surround Vision System* ⇨ *234*.

Shortcut Tray

The shortcut tray is near the bottom of the display. It shows up to four applications.

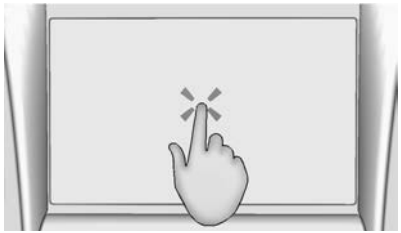
Infotainment Display Features

Infotainment display features show on the display when available. When a feature is unavailable, it may grey out. When a feature is selected, it may highlight.

Infotainment Gestures

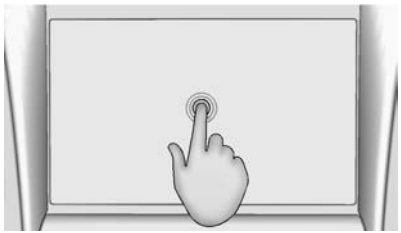
Use the following finger gestures to control the infotainment system.

Touch/Tap



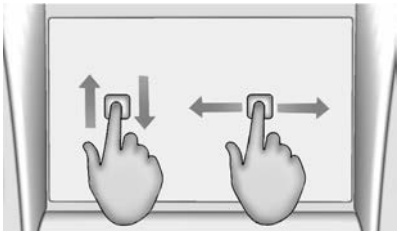
Touch/Tap is used to select an icon or option, activate an application, or change the location inside a map.

Touch and Hold



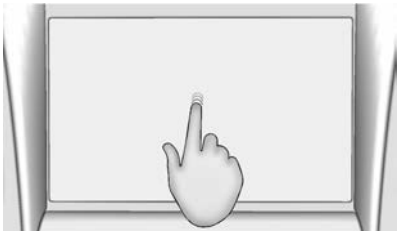
Touch and hold can be used to start another gesture, or to move or delete an application.

Drag



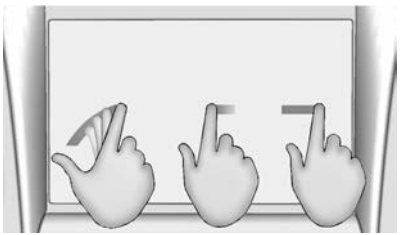
Drag is used to move applications on the Home Page, or to pan the map. To drag the item, it must be held and moved along the display to the new location. This can be done up, down, right, or left. This feature is only available when vehicle is parked and not in motion.

Nudge



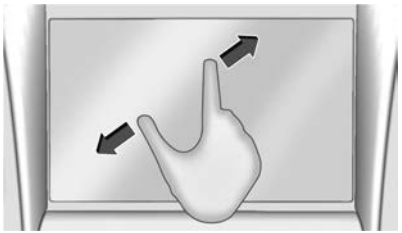
Nudge is used to move items a short distance on a list or a map. To nudge, hold and move the selected item up or down to a new location.

Fling or Swipe



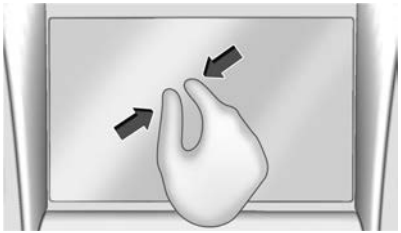
Fling or swipe is used to scroll through a list, pan the map, or change page views. Do this by placing a finger on the infotainment display then moving it rapidly up and down or right and left.

Spread



Spread is used to zoom in on a map, certain images, or a web page. Place finger and thumb together on the display, then move them apart.

Pinch



Pinch is used to zoom out on a map, certain images, or a web page. Place finger and thumb apart on the display, then move them together.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfibre cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfibre cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfibre cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfibre cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

Software Updates

See your dealer for information about software updates.

Radio

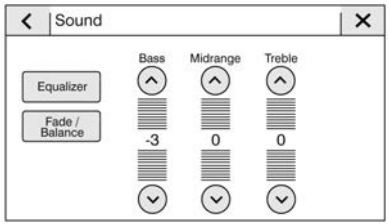
AM-FM-DAB Radio

Playing the Radio

From the Home Page, touch the Audio icon to display the active audio source page. Choose from the three most recently used sources listed at the left side of the display or, depending on model, touch **More** 》 or ﹀ (More) to display a list of available sources. Examples of available sources are: AM, FM, DAB (if equipped), USB, and Bluetooth.

Infotainment System Sound Menu

From any of the audio source main pages, touch (Sound) to display the following:



Equaliser : Touch to adjust Bass, Midrange and Treble using the controls on the infotainment display.

Fade/Balance : Touch to adjust by using the controls on the infotainment display or by tapping/ dragging the crosshair on the display.

Finding a Station

Seeking a Station

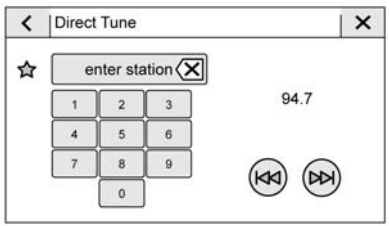
From the AM, FM, or DAB option, press ⏮ or ⏭ on the instrument panel to search for the previous or next strong station.

Browsing Stations

From the AM, FM, or DAB display, touch (Browse) on the infotainment display to list all available stations. Navigate up and down through all stations by scrolling the list. Touch the station that you want to listen to. Touch ☆ to save the station as a favourite.

If equipped, touch Update Station List to update the active stations in your area.

Direct Tune



Access Direct Tune by touching (Tune) on the infotainment display to source AM, FM, or DAB and bring up the keypad. Navigate up and down through all frequencies using the arrows on the right side of the display. Directly enter a station using the keypad. When a new station is entered, the information about that station displays on the right side. This information will update with each new valid frequency. Touch ☆ to save the station as a favourite.

The keypad will grey out entries that do not contribute to a valid frequency and will automatically place a decimal point within the frequency number.

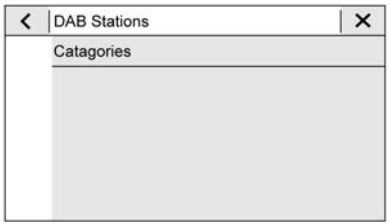
Touch (X) to delete one number at a time. Touch and hold (X) to delete all numbers.

A valid AM, FM, DAB station will automatically tune to the new frequency but not close the Direct Tune display. Touch the Back icon on the infotainment display or ✕ to exit out of Direct Tune.

The tune arrows on the right side of the Direct Tune display tune through the complete station list one station

step at a time per touch. A touch and hold advances through stations quickly.

Categories



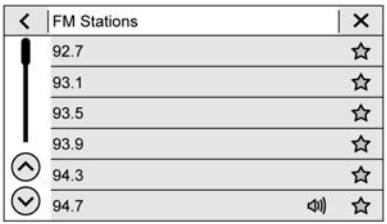
If equipped, categories displays a list of the available radio stations sorted into their type; e.g. Pop, Classic, Information, etc.

Touch Categories at the top of the Browse menu and then touch a category name to display a list of stations available in that category. Touching a station will tune the radio to that station.

Storing Radio Station Favourites

Favourites are displayed in the area at the top of the display.

Touch and hold a preset to store the current station as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite station.



Favourites can also be stored by touching ☆ in a station list. This will highlight indicating that it is now stored as a favourite.

The number of favourites displayed is automatically adjusted by default, but can be manually adjusted in Settings in the System tab under Favourites and then Set Number of Audio Favourites. It can also be adjusted in Settings in the Apps tab under Audio and then Set Number of Audio Favourites.

Radio Data System (RDS)

The audio system has an RDS. RDS features are available for use only on FM and DAB stations that broadcast RDS information. With RDS, the radio can:

- Seek to stations broadcasting the selected type of programming
- Display messages from radio stations

This system relies on receiving specific information from these stations and only works when the information is available. In rare cases, a radio station may broadcast incorrect information that causes the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

The RDS is always on. When information is broadcast from the current FM station, the station name or call letters display on the audio screen.

When RDS signal information has been detected, the fields will be updated on the display to show the RDS data. The radio text will be updated any time new information is received.

The RDS fields on the display will show in the order of:

- Frequency and /or RDS-PSN.
- RDS text line one is the information provided by the broadcast.
- RDS text line two and three is RDS text. Line three is used only if necessary, to wrap over from the text on line two.

If the RDS text information overflows from line two and three, the previous information given on line two and three will clear. The overflow of information will finish starting from the previously used line two and then if necessary, line three.

If an RDS text update occurs during the paging, the display fields are cleared and the new information is displayed, beginning on line two.

Once the entire broadcast text is finished paging, the amount of text that can fit in lines two and three will be displayed and an ellipsis will indicate further text exists.

Radio Reception

Unplug electronic devices from the accessory power outlets if there is interference or static in the radio.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km. Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

FM RDS information may not be available during weak signal conditions.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception.

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB)

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a universal broadcast system that indicates stations by the radio program name on the infotainment display. The DAB signal produces a constant volume and is not affected by interference from nearby frequencies. The reception quality of DAB is better than FM around natural obstacles or buildings. If the DAB signal is poor, you may experience a loss of audio.

Mobile Device Usage

Mobile device usage, such as making or receiving calls, charging, or just having the mobile device on may cause static interference in the radio. Unplug the mobile device or turn it off if this happens.

Multi-Band Antenna

Depending on vehicle model:

- The AM-FM-DAB antenna is embedded in the rear window glass.

Note

The application of after-market window tinting with metallic film can interfere or distort the incoming radio signal. Speak to a window tinting specialist before applying any film.

- The roof antenna is used for AM-FM-DAB reception and GPS (Global Positioning System).

Note

Keep away from obstructions for clear reception. If the vehicle has a sunroof, and it is open, reception can also be affected.

Audio Players

Avoiding Untrusted Media Devices

When using media devices such as USB or mobile devices, consider the source. Untrusted media devices could contain files that affect system operation or performance. Avoid use if the content or origin cannot be trusted.

USB Port

Audio stored on a USB device may be listened to.

The vehicle has two USB ports located below the centre console armrest. These outlets are for data and charging.

Two USB ports are also located at the rear of the centre console for charging only.

Note

Vehicles with navigation system: An SD card slot is provided for navigation map cards. Do not remove the SD card or use the card slot for any other purpose.

Playing from a USB

A USB mass storage device can be connected to the USB port.

Audio extensions supported by the USB may include:

- FLAC
- MP3
- AAC
- OGG
- 3GP

Gracenote

When plugging in a USB device, Gracenote service builds voice tags for music. Voice tags allow artists, albums with hard to pronounce names, and nicknames to be used to play music through voice recognition.

While indexing, infotainment features are available.

My Media Library

MyMedia is only available when more than one indexed device is connected. It allows access to content from all indexed media sources. MyMedia will show as an available source in the Source page.

USB MP3 Player and USB Devices

The USB MP3 players and USB devices connected must comply with the USB Mass Storage Class specification (USB MSC).

To play a USB device:

1. Connect the USB.
2. Touch the Audio icon from the Home Page.
3. Depending on model, touch **More** ⟫ or ⌄ (More) to display a list of available sources and then touch the USB device.

Use the following when playing an active USB source:

▷ **:** Touch to play the current media source.

❙❙ **:** Touch to pause playback of the current media source.

⏮:

- Touch to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track.
- Touch and hold to reverse quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

⏭:

- Touch to seek to the next track.
- Touch and hold to advance quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

Shuffle : Touch the shuffle icon to play music in random order.

USB Sound Menu

See “Infotainment System Sound Menu” under *AM-FM-DAB Radio* ⇨ *150*.

USB Browse Menu

When a list of songs, albums, artists, or other types of media displays, the up and down arrows, and A-Z appear on the left side.

Select A-Z to view a display that will show all letters of the alphabet and touch the letter to go to.

Touch the up or down arrow to move the list up and down.

Touch the Browse option and the following may display:

Playlists

1. Touch to view the playlists stored on the USB.
2. Touch a playlist to view the list of all songs in that playlist.
3. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Examples of supported Playlist extensions are m3u and pls.

Artists

1. Touch to view the list of artists stored on the USB.
2. Touch an artist name to view a list of all albums by the artist.
3. To select a song, touch All Songs or touch an album and then touch a song from the list.

Songs

1. Touch to display a list of all songs on the USB.
2. To begin playback, touch a song from the list.

Albums

1. Touch to view the albums on the USB.
2. Touch the album to view a list of all songs on the album.
3. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Genres

1. Touch to view the genres on the USB.
2. Touch a genre to view a list of artists.
3. Touch an artist to view albums by that artist.
4. Touch an album to view songs on the album.
5. Touch a song to start playback.

iTunes Radio

Touch to view iTunes Radio on the iPhone to get a list of stations.

Compilations

Touch to view the Compilations on the USB.

Composers:

1. Touch to view the composers on the USB.
2. Touch a Composer to view a list of albums by that composer.
3. Touch an album or All Songs to view a list of songs.
4. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Folders:

1. Touch to view the directories on the USB.
2. Touch a folder to view a list of all files.
3. Touch a file from the list to begin playback.

Podcasts : Touch to view the podcasts on the connected Apple device and get a list of podcast episodes.

Audiobooks:

1. Touch to view the audiobooks stored on the Apple device.
2. Touch an audiobook to get a list of chapters.
3. Touch the chapter from the list to begin playback.

File System and Naming

Examples of file systems supported by the USB may include:

- FAT32
- NTFS
- HFS+

The songs, artists, albums, and genres are taken from the file's song information and are only displayed if present. The radio displays the file name as the track name if the song information is not available.

Supported Apple Devices

To view supported devices, see your dealer.

Storing and Recalling Media Favourites

To store media favourites, touch Browse on the infotainment display to show a list of media types.

Select from one of the following Browse options to save a favourite:

Playlists : Touch ☆ next to any playlist to store the playlist as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite playlist. The first song in the playlist begins to play.

Artists : Touch ☆ next to any artist to store the artist as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite artist. The first song in the artist list begins to play.

Songs : Touch ☆ next to any song to store the song as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite song.

Albums : Touch ☆ next to any album to store the album as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite album. The first song in the album list begins to play.

Genres : Touch ☆ next to any genre to store the genre as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite genre. The first song of the genre begins to play.

Podcasts : Touch ☆ next to any podcast to store the podcast as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite podcast. The podcast begins to play.

Audiobooks : Touch ☆ next to any audiobook to store the audiobook as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite audiobook. The first chapter in the audiobook begins to play.

Media Playback and Mute

USB playback will be paused if the system is muted. If the steering wheel mute control is pressed again, playback will resume.

If the source is changed while in mute, playback resumes and audio will unmute.

Auxiliary Jack

The vehicle has an auxiliary input jack located below the console armrest. Possible auxiliary audio sources include:

- Laptop computer
- Audio music player/smart phone

This jack is not an audio output. Do not plug headphones into the auxiliary input jack.

Connect and control an auxiliary device while the vehicle is in P (Park).

Connect a 3.5 mm cable from the auxiliary device to the auxiliary input jack. When a device is connected, the system can play audio from the device over the vehicle speakers.

If an auxiliary device has already been connected, but a different source is currently active, depending on model, touch **More** 》 or ﹀ (More) to display a list of available sources, then touch AUX.

Shuffle and Browse are not available in the AUX source menu.

Bluetooth Audio

Music may be played from a paired Bluetooth device. For details on pairing a device, see *Bluetooth* ⇨ *176*

Volume and song selection may be controlled by using the infotainment controls or the mobile device. If Bluetooth is selected and no

volume is present, check the volume setting on both your mobile device and the infotainment system.

Music can be launched by touching Bluetooth from the recent sources list on the left of the display or, depending on model, touch **More** 》 or ⌄ (More) to display a list of available sources, then touching the Bluetooth device.

To play music via Bluetooth:

1. Turn on the device, and pair to connect the device.
2. Once paired, touch the Audio icon from the Home Page, then touch Bluetooth from the recent sources list on the left of the display.

Bluetooth Sound Menu

See “Infotainment System Sound Menu” under *AM-FM-DAB Radio* ⇨ *150*.

Manage Bluetooth Devices

From the Home Page:

1. Touch the Audio icon.
2. Touch ⌄ (More).
3. Touch Bluetooth.
4. Touch Devices to add or delete devices.

When touching Bluetooth, the radio may not be able to launch the audio player on the connected device to start playing. When the vehicle is not moving, use the mobile device to begin playback.

All devices launch audio differently. When selecting Bluetooth as a source, the radio may show as paused on the display. Press play on the device or touch ▷ on the display to begin playback.

Browse functionality will be provided where supported by the Bluetooth device. This media content will not be part of the MyMedia source mode.

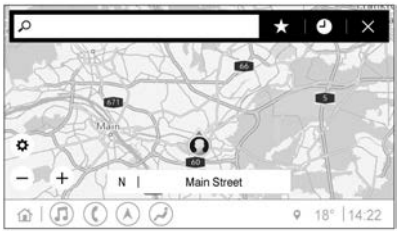
Some smart phones support sending Bluetooth music information to display on the radio. When the radio receives this information, it will check to see if any is available and display it. For more information about supported Bluetooth features, see your dealer or go to the owners section at www.holden.com.au

Navigation

Using the Navigation System

If equipped, launch the Navigation application by touching the Nav icon on the Home Page or on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the infotainment display.

Navigation Map View



After opening the Nav application for the first time, the application opens in full map view displaying the vehicle's current location. When the vehicle is stopped, the search bar may appear along the top of the navigation map view. Manually close the search bar by touching ✕. When the vehicle is moving, the (Search) icon will replace the search bar to maximise the full map view.

Set Up My Places

From the Nav application, set up Home and Work addresses to enable one-touch navigation. To set up Home and Work addresses, touch and select Settings. Choose Set Up My Places; Automatically show My Places on startup should be on by default. Select and enter Home and/or Work address and save.

Touch (current vehicle position). This symbol can also be used to set up Home and Work addresses by touching the pop-ups above it. Touch the pop-up message that appears. The message will automatically close after 15 seconds of inactivity.

To turn off the My Places pop-ups, switch Automatically show My Places on startup to Off.

If the vehicle's system is not signed into a customised profile, the current location icon uses a generic symbol. Once signed into a customised profile, the current location symbol will show a customised icon. See *Navigation Symbols* ⇨ *162*.

Touch the drive To Home or drive To Work pop-up to start either route. Only one will show if the vehicle is already at Home or Work.

Map and Navigation Settings

Touch while in the map view to display options. The following may display:

- 3D Heading Up, 2D Heading Up, 2D North Up
- Show on Map
- Settings
- Avoid on Route (if a route has been set)
- Edit Destinations (if a route has been set)

Touch Settings to view Map and Navigation Settings. The following may display. To exit out of a list, touch ✕ in the top right corner to return to the main map view. Set up preferences before setting a destination and starting active guidance.

Routing Options : Select the route type and road features to avoid while on route.

Map Configuration : Select the following features to be displayed or turned off: 3D Landmarks, 3D Buildings, Show Terrain in 3D, Auto Zoom.

Set up My Places : Allows you to add default destinations such as Home and Work to enable one-touch navigation.

Navigation Voice Control : Touch to access the voice control settings such as navigation volume and prompt level during a call. Volume can also be adjusted using the volume control or steering wheel volume switch while a voice prompt is playing.

Map Colours : Touch Auto to change display modes based on lighting conditions. Selecting Day or Night will set the display bright or dull regardless of lighting conditions.

Alert Preferences : Set alerts on or off during both inactive and active guidance views. Alerts include road safety, traffic camera and country town/village entry.

Manage History : Touch Manage History to access the History options such as recent destinations or searches.

About : Touch to display software information and version.

Maps

The Nav application requires a map database to run. It is stored on an SD card that is connected to the infotainment system. If the map database is not available, a missing SD card error message will be displayed.

SD Card Error Messages

The SD card only works for one unique vehicle. The SD card must pass authentication verification to be used for that specific vehicle. Potential error scenarios and messages include:

- The SD card has initialised for the first time: “Once initialised, this SD card can only be used for navigation in this vehicle.”
- The SD card is not working properly: “SD card is not functioning properly. (Error Code).”
- The SD card is not paired with the existing system: “This SD card is not valid in this vehicle for navigation. See Owner's Manual for more detail or visit your dealer. (Error Code).”
- The SD card has been removed from the slot: “SD card has been removed. (Error Code).”

Touch Continue to resume after the initialisation error message. For the other messages, touch OK to return to the Home Page.

Navigation Symbols

Following are the most common symbols that appear in the Nav application.

This indicates the vehicle's current location and direction on the map.

This is the vehicle's current location icon during inactive guidance mode. Once a user profile is created, the current location icon can be customised.

This icon indicates the vehicle's current location and direction on the map.

The destination pin marks the location of the final destination. Touch the pin to view the destination address or to add it or remove it from the Favourites list. Hide the information by touching the pin one more time. It will automatically time out if no action is taken.

Points of Interest (POIs) are places of interest for parking and petrol stations, etc.

The progress bar provides an overview of the route progress. As the route proceeds, the vehicle icon moves up the bar.

Touch the icon to zoom out on the map and view the entire route. Touch it again to return to the previous view.

View the drive time by touching the estimated time of arrival (ETA).

Current Location

When the vehicle is parked and not in a Navigation session, the user icon is centred on the map view, highlighting the current location.

Destination

Waypoints

Add up to five waypoints, which are additional destinations, along the route. To add an additional stop or waypoint:

- From active guidance, touch .
- Search for the destination using Voice search, or the Quick Category icons.
- Choose search results Along Route, Nearby, or Near Destination.
- Choose the desired waypoint and touch Add to Trip or replace the current destination by touching New Destination.

Route options are not available for waypoints.

Arriving at a Waypoint

When approaching a waypoint, the system will display a Destination Arrival view. To continue on to the next destination touch the Drive to message on the infotainment display.

If the vehicle passes the waypoint or gets out of the current route, the system will automatically reroute back to this waypoint. At the same time, it will show a Drive to icon along with the next waypoint address so the current waypoint can be skipped and guidance can resume to the next waypoint or destination.

Editing a Waypoint

When waypoints are added during active guidance, the system allows a stop to be deleted or the order to be changed. To edit a waypoint:

1. Touch .
2. Touch Edit Destinations.
   - Modify destination order by touching and holding the arrow until it is highlighted. Drag to move the waypoint up or down the list.
   - Delete a waypoint by touching . A pop-up will appear to confirm waypoint removal. Once the request is confirmed, the system will remove the address from the destinations list. Touch X on the top right corner so the system can recalculate the route.

     If there is only one address in the destinations list, the system will disable the move and delete functions. The system will not allow the final destination to be deleted.

Map Information

Road network attributes are contained in the map database for map information. Attributes include

information such as street names, street addresses, and turn restrictions. A detailed area includes all major highways, service roads, and residential roads. The detailed areas include Places of Interest (POIs) such as restaurants, airports, banks, hospitals, police stations, petrol stations, tourist attractions, and historical monuments.

The map database may not include data for newly constructed areas or map database corrections that are completed after production. The navigation system provides full route guidance in the detailed map areas. See *Maps* ⇨ *161*.

Zoom Control

The zoom control display is shown on the map view. A few ways to zoom in or out are:

- Touch + or – to zoom in or out on the map.
- Double tap with one finger to zoom in or single tap with two fingers to zoom out on the map.
- Use the index finger and thumb to zoom out by pinching and then zoom in by spreading those two fingers on the map.

Map Gestures and Map Scale

Use the following gestures on the infotainment display to adjust the map scale and display options.

- Pinch to zoom in or out.
- Pan the map.
- Use two fingers to tilt down and change from 2D to 3D. Tilt up to change back to 2D.
- Rotate the map.

See *Using the System* ⇨ *147*.

Mute

When in active guidance, the audio prompts while using navigation can be muted. Touch the speaker icon on the right side of the upper bar. A slash will appear on the speaker to indicate voice guidance is muted.

Active Guidance View

When a destination is chosen and a navigation session is active, the navigation system enters into an Active Guidance View (AGV).

Map Orientation

Touch the Options icon on the map to access map orientation settings. Map orientation is 3D Heading Up by default.

Available settings are:

- 3D Heading Up (Default): 3D map with the vehicle pointing up. In this mode, the current location icon will always head up and the map will rotate around it.
- 2D Heading Up: 2D map with the vehicle pointing up. In this mode, the current location icon will always head up and the map will rotate around it.
- 2D North Up: 2D map with North pointing up. In this mode, the current location icon will shift as the vehicle turns left and right.

Touch the icon to change the map type. The icon and label will also update accordingly.

Depending on the zoom level of the 2D Heading Up and 3D Heading Up maps, the system may automatically switch to the 2D North Up map.

When in AGV , the entire route can be viewed in 2D North Up by touching the traffic bar. The map will zoom out and readjust to display the full route. When in 2D North Up Route View, the Recentre icon will appear in the middle of the display. Touch either the Recentre icon or the traffic bar again to return to the previous view, either 2D or 3D.

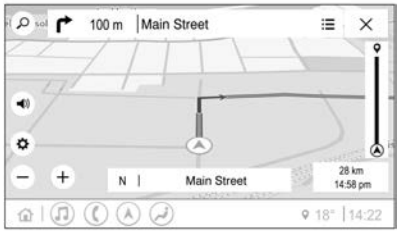
Lane Guidance

The map will display the lane information for the upcoming manoeuvre if it is available.

Junction View

When a vehicle is on the highway and approaching the exit, an image displays the lane that the vehicle must stay in to complete the next manoeuvre.

Quick-Turn View



When the vehicle is approaching a turn with the next turn following in quick succession, a quick-turn list appears below the primary turn indicator. An audio prompt will announce the quick turn.

Auto-Zoom

When approaching a manoeuvre, the map will automatically zoom in to show both the vehicle icon and the upcoming manoeuvre to give a better view of the manoeuvre. Once the manoeuvre is complete, the system will zoom back to the previous zoom level. Touch ⚙ on the map to access Settings, then touch Map Configuration to access Auto-Zoom. This feature can be enabled or disabled.

Route List

Touch the menu option next to the next turn street name to display the Route List.

The Route List displays the turns and directions from the current location to the final destination.

Editing the Route List

The Route List can be edited by choosing EDIT, which expands the list to fill the display and enters the Edit Mode. While in Edit Mode, an unwanted route segment can be removed from the route by touching 🗑 next to the segment. A pop-up appears to confirm segment removal.

When the route segment has been removed, all segments are replaced by an activity indicator while the new route is recalculated. When the

recalculation is complete, the activity indicator is replaced with the new route segments.

Highway Exit Lists

When displayed, touch the highway exit icon to open the Exit list. This icon displays next to the current street name near the bottom of the display. The icon only appears when on a highway with defined exits.

While travelling on roads with designated exits, an Exit list may be available. The Exit list displays the exit number, distance to the exit from the current vehicle position, and convenience stops that may be available, such as fuel, coffee, food, and lodging.

Next Manoeuvre Menu

When in Active Guidance, the Next manoeuvre Turn Arrow, Street Name, and manoeuvre Distance are shown in the Next manoeuvre at the top of the display overlaying the map. ETA, Distance to Destination, and Traffic Indicator are displayed in a panel pinned on the right of the display.

Navigation Next Turn Manoeuvre Alert

If the Navigation application is not open when a near manoeuvre prompt is given, it is shown as an alert. Touch the alert to go to the main navigation view or touch ✕ to dismiss the alert.

Repeat Voice Guidance

This symbol indicates the next guidance manoeuvre. Touch it to repeat the last spoken guidance instruction.

End Route

Touch Cancel at the top right corner to end active guidance and return to inactive guidance. If active guidance is cancelled before the destination has been reached, a pop-up option to Resume Trip will appear.

Resume Trip

The trip can be resumed if it was cancelled by touching the Resume Trip pop-up option.

If the system has determined that the destination has been reached, either because the arrival view displayed or the destination has been passed, the Resume Trip option will not appear.

Favourites

The navigation favourites can have contacts, addresses, or POIs that have been saved through the favourite icon on the details view.

Accessing Favourites

To manage favourites, touch the Search icon on the Home Page. Touch Favourites to access the Favourites option.

In the Nav application, view the Favourites list by touching ☆ in the search bar along the top of the Nav map view. If the search bar is closed, touch 🔍 and select ☆.

Saving Favourites

Favourites can be added from a number of the system's applications. Touch the favourites icon to save content as a favourite.

Renaming Navigation Favourites

1. Touch the Settings icon on the Home Page and touch the System tab.
2. Touch Favourites to access the Manage Favourites option.
3. Touch a saved Navigation favourite to access the edit icon. Touch the edit icon to rename the favourite.
4. Touch Save to store the renamed favourite.

Recents

Touch ◷ to access a list of recent destinations.

Recentre Position Icon

Touch the Recentre Position arrow in the middle of the map view to reset the map to the current location.

Last Parked Location

The Last Parked Location is the last location the vehicle engine was turned off. That location is displayed in the first row of the Recents list. Touching the last Parked Location shows the Address Details view to either save the address or drive to it. The Last Parked Location can be deleted by entering the Edit display. Once the Last Parked Location is deleted, it no longer appears in the Recents list, unless the vehicle is started at that location again.

Show POI Icons

To see the POI categories, touch Options, then touch Show on Map. Up to eight categories of icons can be selected.

Search

Touch Search on the infotainment display to open the search display. It has a search field entry box, quick category icon shortcuts, recents icon, favourites icon, and keyboard.

Auto Complete

Enter a partial location in the field entry box on the search display. Auto complete will attempt to complete the destination based on what is being entered. Touch the suggested item to search.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

The position of the vehicle is determined by using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, and map data.

At times, other interference such as the satellite condition, road configuration, condition of the vehicle, and/or other circumstances can affect the navigation system's ability to determine the accurate position of the vehicle.

The GPS shows the current position of the vehicle using signals sent by GPS satellites. When the vehicle is not receiving signals from the satellites, a symbol appears in the status bar.

This system might not be available or interference can occur if any of the following are true:

- Signals are obstructed by tall buildings, trees, large trucks, or a tunnel.
- Satellites are being repaired or improved.

For more information if the GPS is not functioning properly, see *Problems with Route Guidance* ⇨ *168* and *If the System Needs Service* ⇨ *169*.

Vehicle Positioning

At times, the position of the vehicle on the map could be inaccurate due to one or more of the following reasons:

- The road system has changed.
- The vehicle is driving on slippery road surfaces such as sand, gravel, or snow.
- The vehicle is travelling on winding roads or long, straight roads.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall building or a large vehicle.
- The surface streets run parallel to a freeway.
- The vehicle has been transferred by a vehicle carrier or a ferry.
- The current position calibration is set incorrectly.
- The vehicle is travelling at high speed.
- The vehicle changes directions more than once, or the vehicle is turning on a turn table in a parking lot.
- The vehicle is entering and/or exiting a parking lot, garage, or a lot with a roof.
- The GPS signal is not received.
- A roof carrier is installed on the vehicle.
- Tyre chains are installed on the vehicle.
- The tyres are replaced or worn.
- The tyre pressure for the tyres is incorrect.
- This is the first navigation use after the map data is updated.
- The 12-volt battery has been disconnected for several days.
- The vehicle is driving in heavy traffic where driving is at low speeds, and the vehicle is stopped and started repeatedly.

Problems with Route Guidance

Inappropriate route guidance can occur under one or more of the following conditions:

- The turn was not made on the road indicated.
- Route guidance might not be available when using automatic rerouting for the next right or left turn.
- The route might not be changed when using automatic rerouting.
- There is no route guidance when turning at an intersection.
- Plural names of places might be announced occasionally.

- It could take a long time to operate automatic rerouting during high-speed driving.
- Automatic rerouting might display a route returning to the set waypoint if heading for a destination without passing through a set waypoint.
- The route prohibits the entry of a vehicle due to a regulation by time or season or any other regulation which may be given.
- Some routes might not be searched.
- The route to the destination might not be shown if there are new roads, if roads have recently changed, or if certain roads are not listed in the map data. See *Maps* ⇨ *161*.

To recalibrate the vehicle's position on the map, park with the vehicle running for two to five minutes, until the vehicle position updates. Make sure the vehicle is parked in a location that is safe and has a clear view of the sky and away from large obstructions.

If the System Needs Service

If the navigation system needs service and the steps listed here have been followed but there are still problems, see your dealer.

Map Data Updates

The map data in the vehicle is the most up-to-date information available when the vehicle was produced. The map data is updated periodically, provided that the map information has changed and the vehicle has a relevant service plan.

For questions about the operation of the navigation system or the update process, see your dealer.

Database Coverage Explanations

Coverage areas vary with respect to the level of map detail available for any given area. Some areas feature greater levels of detail than others. If this happens, it does not mean there is a problem with the system. As the map data is updated, more detail can become available for areas that previously had limited detail. See *Map Data Updates* ⇨ *169*.

Voice Recognition

If equipped, voice recognition allows for hands-free operation within the navigation, audio, and mobile device applications. This feature can be started by pressing on the steering wheel or by touching on the infotainment display with the navigation application.

However, not all features within these areas are supported by voice commands. Generally, only complex tasks that require multiple manual interactions to complete are supported by voice commands.

For example, tasks that take more than one or two touches, such as selecting a song or artist to play from a media device, would be supported by voice commands. Other tasks, like adjusting the volume or seeking up or down, are audio features that are easily performed by touching one or two options, and are not supported by voice commands.

In general there are flexible ways to speak commands for completing tasks.

Try stating a One-Shot command, such as “Directions to address <house number, street, city>”. Another example of a One-Shot Destination Entry command is, “Directions to Place of Interest at <hotel>”. If these commands do not work, try saying, “Take me to Place of Interest” or “Find address” and the system will walk you through by asking additional questions.

Using Voice Recognition

Voice recognition becomes available once the system has been initialised. This begins when the ignition is turned on. Initialisation may take a few moments.

1. Press on the steering wheel controls to activate voice recognition.
2. The audio system mutes and the system plays a prompt followed by a beep.
3. Wait until after the beep completes, then clearly speak one of the commands described in this section.

   A voice recognition system prompt can be interrupted while it is playing by pressing again.

   For example, if the prompt seems to be taking too long to finish, to speak the command without waiting for the prompt to complete, press again and wait for the beep.

There are three voice prompt modes supported:

- Informative verbal prompts: This type of prompt will provide more information regarding the supported actions.
- Short prompts: This type of prompt will provide simple instructions about what can be stated.
- Auto informative prompts: This type of prompt plays during the first few speech sessions, then

automatically switches to the short prompt after some experience has been gained through using the system.

If a command is not spoken, the voice recognition system says a help prompt.

Prompts and Infotainment Displays

While a voice recognition session is active, there may be corresponding options showing on the displays. A selection can be made by manually touching the option, or by speaking the number for the option to select. Manual interaction in the voice recognition session is permitted. Interaction during a voice session may be completed entirely using voice commands while some manual commands may expedite a task. If a selection is made using a manual control, the voice recognition dialog will progress in the same way as if the selection were made using a voice command. Once the system completes the task, or the session is terminated, the voice recognition dialog stops.

An example of this type of manual intervention is touching an entry of a displayed number list instead of speaking the number associated with the entry desired.

Cancelling Voice Recognition

- Touch or say “Cancel” or “Exit” to terminate the voice recognition session and show the display where voice recognition was initiated.
- Press on the steering wheel controls to terminate the voice recognition session and show the display from where voice recognition was initiated.

Helpful Hints for Speaking Commands

Voice recognition can understand commands that are naturally stated in sentence form or direct commands that state the application and the task.

For best results:

- Listen for the prompt before saying a command or reply.
- Speak the command naturally, not too fast, not too slow.
- Use direct commands without a lot of extra words. For example, “Call <name> at work,” “Play” followed by the artist or song name, or “Tune” followed by the radio station number.
- Navigation destinations can be made in a single command using keywords. A few examples are: “I want directions to an address,” “I need to find a Place of Interest or (POI)” or “Find contact.”

  The system responds by requesting more details. For other POIs, say the name of a category like “Restaurants,” “Shopping Malls,” or “Hospitals.”

Direct commands might be more clearly understood by the system. An example of a direct command would be “Call <number>”. Examples of these direct commands are shown on most of the displays while a voice session is active. If “Phone” or “Phone Commands,” is

spoken, the system understands that a phone call is requested and will respond with questions until enough details are gathered to make a call.

If a mobile phone number has been saved with a name and a place, the direct command should include both, for example “Call <name> at work.”

Using Voice Recognition for List Options

When a list is displayed, a voice prompt will ask to confirm or select an option from that list.

When a display contains a list, there may be options that are available but not displayed. The list on a voice recognition screen functions the same as a list on other displays. Scrolling or flinging can be used to help display other entries from the list.

Manually scrolling or paging the list on a display during a voice recognition session suspends the current voice recognition event and plays the prompt “Please select manually or touch the Back icon on the infotainment display to try again.”

If manual selection takes more than 15 seconds, the session terminates and prompts that it has timed out. The display returns to the display where voice recognition was initiated.

The Back Command

Say “Back” or touch the Back icon on the infotainment display to go to the previous display.

If in voice recognition, and “Back” is spoken all the way back to the starting display, and then “Back” is spoken one more time, the voice recognition session will cancel.

Help

Say “Help” on any voice recognition display and the help prompt for the display is played.

Touching while the help prompt is playing will terminate the prompt and a beep will be heard. Doing this will stop the help prompt so that a voice command can be used.

Voice Recognition for the Radio

If browsing the audio sources when voice is touched, the voice recognition commands for AM, FM, and DAB are available.

“Switch to AM” : Switch bands to AM and tune to the last AM radio station.

“Switch to FM” : Switch bands to FM and tune to the last FM radio station.

“Switch to DAB” : Switch bands to DAB and tune to the last DAB radio station.

“Tune to <AM frequency> AM” : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like “nine fifty”).

“Tune to <FM frequency> FM” : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like “one oh one point one”).

“Tune to <DAB station name> DAB” : Tune to the radio station name.

Voice Recognition for Audio My Media

The available voice recognition commands for [browsing] MyMedia are:

“Play Artist” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific artist name.

“Play Artist <artist name>” : Begin playback of a specific artist.

“Play Album” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific album name.

“Play Album <album name>” : Begin playback of a specific album.

“Play Song” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific song name.

“Play Song <song name>” : Begin playback of a specific song, if available.

“Play Genre” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific genre.

“Play Genre <genre name>” : Begin playback of a specific genre.

“Play Playlist” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific playlist name.

“Play Playlist <playlist name>” : Begin playback of a specific playlist.

“Play <device name>” : Play music from a specific device identified by name. The device name is the name showing on the display when the device is first selected as an audio source.

“Play Chapter” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Chapter <chapter name>” : Begin playback of a specific chapter.

“Play Audiobook” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific audiobook.

“Play Audiobook <audiobook name>” : Begin playback of a specific audiobook.

“Play Episode” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Episode <episode name>” : Begin playback of a specific episode.

“Play Podcast” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific podcast.

“Play Podcast <podcast name>” : Begin playback of a specific podcast.

“My Media” : Begin a dialog to enter the desired media content.

Handling Large Amounts of Media Content

It is expected that large amounts of media content will be brought into the vehicle. It may be necessary to handle large amounts of media content in a different way than smaller amounts of media. The system may limit the options of voice recognition by not allowing selection of files by voice at the highest level if the number of files exceeds the maximum limit.

Changes to voice commands due to media content limits are:

- Files including other individual files of all media types such as songs, audiobook chapters, podcast episodes, and videos.
- Album type folders including types such as albums and audiobooks.

There are no restrictions if the number of files and albums is less than 12,000. When the number of files connected to the system is between 12,000 and 24,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like “Play <song name>”.

The restriction is that the command “Play Song” must be spoken first; the system will then ask for the song name. The reply command would be to say the name of the song to play.

Similar limits exist for album content. If there are more than 12,000 albums, but less than 24,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like, “Play <album name>”. The command “Play Album” must first be spoken; the system will then ask for the album name. The reply would be to say the name of the album to play.

Once the number of files has exceeded approximately 24,000, there is no support for accessing the songs directly through voice commands. There will still be access to the media content by using commands for playlists, artists, and genres.

The access commands for playlists, artists, and genres are prohibited after the number of this type of media exceeds 12,000.

The system will provide feedback the first time voice recognition is initiated if it has become apparent that any of these limits are reached during a device initialising process.

Voice recognition performance will degrade to some extent based on many factors when adding large amounts of data to recognise. If this is the case, perhaps accessing songs through playlists or artist name would work better.

Voice Recognition for Navigation

“Navigation” : Begin a dialogue to enter specific destination information.

“Navigation Commands” : Begin a dialogue to enter specific destination information.

“Address” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination address, which includes the entire address consisting of the house number, street name, city, and country.

“Place of Interest” : Begin a dialog to enter a destination Place of Interest category or major brand name.

The name must be precisely spoken. Nicknames or short names for the businesses will not likely be found. Lesser known businesses might have to be located by category, such as restaurants, hotels, or banks.

“Navigate to Contact” : Begin a dialogue to enter a specific destination contact name.

“Cancel Route” : End route guidance.

“Take Me Home” : Create a route to a stored home location.

Voice Recognition for the Phone

“Call <contact name>” : Initiate a call to a stored contact. The command may include location if the contact has location numbers stored.

“Call <contact> At Home,” “At Work,” “On Mobile,” or “On Other” : Initiate a call to a stored contact and location at home, at work, on mobile device, or on another phone.

“Call <mobile phone number>” : Initiate a call to a mobile phone number of seven digits, 10 digits, or three digit emergency numbers.

“Pair Phone” : Begin the Bluetooth pairing process. Follow the instructions on the radio display.

“Redial” : Initiate a call to the last dialled number.

“Switch Phone” : Select a different connected mobile phone for outgoing calls.

“Voice Keypad” : Begin a dialog to enter special numbers like international numbers. The numbers can be entered in groups of digits with each group of digits being repeated back by the system. If the group of digits is not correct, the command “Delete” will remove the last group of digits and allow them to be re-entered. Once the entire number has been entered, the command “Call” will start dialling the number.

Bluetooth Voice Recognition (Pass-thru)

Press and hold on the steering wheel controls for longer than one second to access Bluetooth Voice Recognition/Siri Eyes Free.

Bluetooth voice recognition is not available during an active phone projection session, such as Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Phone

Bluetooth

The Bluetooth-capable system can interact with many mobile phones, allowing:

- Placement and receipt of calls in a hands-free mode.
- Sharing of the phone's address book or contact list with the vehicle.

To minimise driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the mobile phone. Organise the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries. If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.
- Pair mobile phone(s) to the vehicle. The system may not work with all mobile phones. See “Pairing” later in this section.

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable mobile phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system and voice recognition are used to control the system. The system can be used while the ignition is on or in ACC/ ACCESSORY. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 9.1 m. Not all mobile phones support all functions and not all mobile phones work with the Bluetooth system. See your dealer for more information about compatible mobile phones, or go to the Owners section at www.holden.com.au.

Controls

Use the controls on the instrument panel and the steering wheel controls to operate the Bluetooth system.

Steering Wheel Controls

: Press to answer incoming calls. Hold to start voice recognition on your connected Bluetooth mobile phone.

: Press to end a call, decline a call, or cancel an operation. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

Infotainment System Controls

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Using the System* ⇨ *147*.

Audio System

When using the Bluetooth mobile phone system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. The volume level while on a mobile phone call can be adjusted by pressing the steering wheel controls or the volume control on the instrument panel. The adjusted volume level remains in

memory for later calls. The volume cannot be lowered beyond a certain level.

Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the phone.

Pairing Information

- If no mobile phone has been connected, the Phone main page on the infotainment display will show the Connect Phone option. Touch this option to connect. Another way to connect is to touch the Phones tab at the top right of the display and then touch Add Phone.
- A Bluetooth smartphone with music capability can be paired to the vehicle as a smartphone and a music player at the same time.
- Up to 10 phones can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the phone changes or it is deleted from the system.
- If multiple paired phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the paired phone that is set to First to Connect. If there is no phone set to First to Connect, it will link to the phone which was used last. To link to a different paired phone, see “Linking to a Different Phone” later in this section.

Pairing a Phone

1. Make sure Bluetooth has been enabled on the phone before the pairing process is started.
2. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
3. Touch Phones at the top of the infotainment display. There is also a Connect Phones option in the middle of the Phone display which will shortcut to the Phone List menu.
4. Touch Add Phone.
5. Select the vehicle name shown on the infotainment display from your phone's Bluetooth Settings list.
6. Follow the instructions on the phone to confirm the six-digit code showing on the infotainment display and touch Pair. The code on the phone and infotainment display will need to be acknowledged for a successful pair.
7. Start the pairing process on the phone to be paired to the vehicle. See the phone manufacturer's user guide for information on this process. Once the phone is paired, it will show under Connected.

8. If the vehicle name does not appear on your phone, there are a few ways to start the pairing process over.
   - Turn the phone off and then back on.
   - Go back to the beginning of the Phone menus on the infotainment display and restart the pairing process.
   - Reset the phone, but this step should be done as a last effort.
9. If the phone prompts to accept connection or allow phone book download, touch Always Accept and Allow. The phone book may not be available if not accepted.
10. Repeat Steps 1–8 to pair additional phones.

First to Connect Paired Phones

If multiple paired mobile phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the paired phone that is set as First to Connect. To enable a paired phone as the First to Connect phone:

1. Make sure the phone is turned on.
2. Touch Settings, then touch System.
3. Touch Phones to access all paired and all connected phones.
4. Touch the information icon to the right of the phone to open the phone's settings menu.
5. Select the First to Connect option, to enable the setting for that phone.

Mobile phones can be added, removed, connected, and disconnected. A sub-menu will display whenever a request is made to add or manage phones.

Secondary Phone

A mobile phone can be enabled as a Secondary Phone by touching the information icon to the right of the paired phone name to open the phone settings menu. If a phone is enabled as a Secondary Phone, it can connect simultaneously alongside another Bluetooth mobile phone. In doing so, the Secondary Phone will be labelled as Incoming Calls. This means the mobile phone can only receive calls. The Address Book of a Secondary Phone will not be available and hands-free outgoing calls cannot be placed using this phone.

If needed, touch the Secondary Phone while in the Phones list to swap it into the Outgoing and Incoming role. This role makes it possible to place outgoing calls from the Contacts and Recents list.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
2. Touch Phones.

Disconnecting a Connected Phone

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch the information icon next to the connected phone to show the phone's information display.
4. Touch Disconnect.

Deleting a Paired Phone

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch the information icon next to the connected phone to display the phone's information display.
4. Touch Forget Device.

Linking to a Different Phone

To link to a different mobile phone, the new phone must be in the vehicle and paired to the Bluetooth system.

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch the new phone to link to from the not connected phone list. See *Settings* ⇨ *182* for more information about setting the phone as the First to Connect or as a Secondary Phone.

Switching to Handset or Hands free Mode

To switch between handset or handsfree mode:

- While the active call is hands-free, touch the Handset option to switch to the handset mode.

  The mute icon will not be available or functional while Handset mode is active.
- While the active call is on the handset, touch the Handset option to switch to the hands-free mode.

Making a Call Using Contacts and Recent Calls

Calls can be made through the Bluetooth system using personal phone contact information for all mobile phones that support the Phone Book feature. Become familiar with the phone settings and operation. Verify the phone supports this feature.

The Contacts menu accesses the phone book stored in the phone.

The Recents menu accesses the Recents call list from your phone.

To make a call using the Contacts menu:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Contacts.
3. The Contacts list can be searched by using the first character. Touch A-Z on the infotainment display to scroll through the list of names.

   Select the name to call.

4. Touch the desired contact number to call.

To make a call using the Recents menu:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Recents.
3. Touch the name or number to call.

Making a Call Using the Keypad

To make a call by dialling the numbers:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Keypad and enter a phone number.
3. Touch to start dialling the number.

Searching Contacts Using the Keypad

To search for contacts using the keypad:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Keypad and enter partial phone numbers or contact names using the digits on the keypad to search.

   Results will show on the right side of the display. Touch one to place a call.

Accepting or Declining a Call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

Accepting a Call

There are two ways to accept a call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Answer on the infotainment display.

Declining a Call

There are two ways to decline a call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Ignore on the infotainment display.

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the mobile service carrier to work.

Accepting a Call

Press to answer, then touch Switch on the infotainment display.

Declining a Call

Press to decline, then touch Ignore on the infotainment display

Switching Between Calls (Call Waiting Calls Only)

To switch between calls, touch the Phone icon on the Home Page to display Call View. While in Call View, touch the call information of the call on hold to change calls.

Three-Way Calling

Three-way calling must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the mobile service carrier to work.

To start a three-way call while in a current call:

1. In the Call View, touch Add Call to add another call.
2. Initiate the second call by selecting from Recents, Contacts, or Keypad.
3. When the second call is active, touch the merge icon to conference the three-way call together.

Ending a Call

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch next to a call to end only that call.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers during a call. This is used when calling a menu-driven phone system. Use the Keypad to enter the number.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay capability may be available through a compatible smartphone. The Android Auto and Apple CarPlay icons are displayed on the Home Page of the infotainment display.

To use Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay:

1. Download the Android Auto App to your Android smartphone from the Google Play store. There is no App required for Apple CarPlay.
2. Connect your Android phone or Apple iPhone by using the compatible smartphone USB cable and plugging into the USB data port located at the front of the centre console. If equipped, the USB ports at the rear of the console are for charging only.

   For best performance it is highly recommended to use the device's factory-provided USB cable. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.
3. When the phone is first connected to activate Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the message “Device Projection Privacy Consent” will appear.
   - Touch Continue to launch Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.
   - Touch Disable to remove Apple CarPlay and Android Auto capability from the vehicle Settings menu. Other functions may still work.

The Android Auto and Apple CarPlay icons on the Home Page will illuminate depending on the

smartphone. Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay may automatically launch upon USB connection. If not, touch the Android Auto or Apple CarPlay icon on the Home Page to launch.

Press ⌂ on the instrument panel to return to the Home Page.

Features are subject to change. For further information on how to set up Android Auto and Apple CarPlay in the vehicle, see your dealer.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto can be disabled from the infotainment system. To do this, touch Home, Settings, and then touch the Apps tab along the top of the display. Use the On/Off toggled to turn off Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google's terms and privacy policy. Apple CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple's terms and privacy policy. Data plan rates apply. For Android Auto support see https://support.google.com/androidauto. For Apple CarPlay support see www.apple.com/ios/carplay/. Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time. Android Auto, Android, Google, Google Play, and other marks are trademarks of Google Inc.; Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Settings

Depending on vehicle model, the settings menu may be organised into four categories. Select the desired category by touching System, Apps, Vehicle or Personal.

Note

This section describes the features under the System, Apps and Personal tabs. For features in the Vehicle tab see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

To access the settings menus:

1. Touch Settings on the Home Page on the infotainment display.
2. Touch the desired category to display a list of available options.
3. Touch to select the desired feature setting.
4. Touch the options on the infotainment display to disable or enable a feature.
5. Touch ✕ to go to the top level of the Settings menu.

System

The menu may contain the following:

Time / Date

Use the following features to set the clock:

- Automatic Time and Date: Touch Off or On to enable or disable automatic update of the time and date. When this feature is on, the time and date cannot be manually set.
- Set Time: Touch to manually set the time using the controls on the infotainment display.
- Set Date: Touch to manually set the date using the controls on the infotainment display.
- Automatic Time Zone: Touch to automatically set the time zone.
- Select Time Zone: Touch to manually set the time zone. Automatic Time Zone must be off to access this item. Touch a time zone from the list.
- Use 24-hour Format: Touch to specify the clock format shown.

  Touch Off or On to disable or enable.

Language

This will set the display language used on the infotainment display. It may also use the selected language for voice recognition and audio feedback. Touch Language and touch the appropriate language.

Phones

Touch to connect to a different mobile phone or mobile device source, disconnect a mobile phone or media device, or delete a mobile phone or media device.

Privacy

This setting enables or disables sharing vehicle location.

Touch and the following may display:

- Location Services.

Display

Touch and the following may display:

- Mode: This adjusts the appearance of the navigation map view and any downloaded Apps optimised for day or night time conditions. Set to Auto for the display to automatically adjust based on bright/dark conditions.

  Touch Auto, Day, or Night to adjust the display.
- Calibrate Touchscreen: Touch to calibrate the infotainment display and follow the prompts.
- Turn Display Off: Touch to turn the display off. Touch anywhere on the infotainment display or press any infotainment control button to turn the display on.

Sounds

Touch and the following may display:

- Maximum Startup Volume: This feature adjusts the maximum volume of the infotainment system when you start your vehicle. To set the maximum startup volume, touch the controls on the infotainment display to increase or decrease.
- Audio Cues: This setting determines if a sound plays when the infotainment system starts and shuts down. This feature can be turned off or on.
- Set Audio Cue Volume: This setting controls the audio cue volume. Use the controls to adjust.
- Audible Touch Feedback: This setting determines if a sound plays when touching the infotainment display or radio controls. This feature can be turned off or on.

Voice

Touch and the following may display:

- Confirm More/Less: This setting specifies how often the voice recognition system confirms commands. Touch Confirm More to have the system check with you more often before acting on your commands.
- Prompt Length: This setting specifies the amount of detail the voice recognition system provides when giving you feedback. Touch Auto to have the system automatically adjust to your speech habits. Touch Informative, Short, or Auto.
- Audio Feedback Speed: Touch Slow, Medium, or Fast to adjust how quickly the voice recognition system speaks.

Favourites

Touch and the following may display:

- Manage Favourites: Touch to display a list of Audio, Phone, and Navigation favourites.

  Favourites can be moved, renamed, or deleted.

  To move, touch and hold the favourite, and then drag up or down to rearrange the position.
- Set Number of Audio Favourites: Touch to select how many favourites pages can be viewed from the audio application. The Auto setting will automatically adjust this number based on the number of favourites you have saved. Touch Auto, 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40.

Vehicle Software

The following may be displayed under the Vehicle Software title.

- Updates: Touch to update the software.

- About: Touch to view the infotainment system software information.
- Running Applications: Display a list of the applications currently running.
- Return to Factory Settings: Resets all system settings to the factory default.

Updates

Touch to update the software.

About

Touch to view the infotainment system software information.

Restore Factory Settings

Touch and the following may display:

- Reset Vehicle Settings: Resets all vehicle settings for the current user.

  Touch Reset or Cancel.
- Delete Settings and Personal Data: Erases App data settings, user profiles, and personal data including navigation and mobile device data.

  Touch Erase or Cancel.

Apps

The menu may contain the following:

Android Auto

This feature allows you to interact directly with your mobile device on the infotainment display. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *181*.

Touch the controls on the infotainment display to disable or enable.

Apple CarPlay

This feature allows you to interact directly with your mobile device on the infotainment display. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *181*.

Touch the controls on the infotainment display to disable or enable.

Audio

Depending on the current audio source, different options will be available.

Touch and the following may display:

- Tone Settings: Touch to adjust Equaliser, Fade/Balance, or Sound Mode. See “Infotainment System Sound Menu” in *AM-FM-DAB Radio* ⇨ *150*.
- Auto Volume: This feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed.

  Touch Off, Low, Medium-Low, Medium, Medium-High, or High.
- Manage Favourites: Touch to display a list of Audio, Mobile Devices, and Navigation favourites.

  Favourites can be moved, renamed, or deleted.

  To move, touch and hold the favourite, and then drag up or down to rearrange the position.

- Set Number of Audio Favourites: Touch to select how many favourites pages can be viewed from the audio application. The Auto setting will automatically adjust this number based on the number of favourites you have saved. Touch Auto, 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40.
- RDS: This allows the Radio Data System (RDS) to be turned on or off.

  Touch the controls on the infotainment display to disable or enable.
- Manage Devices: Select to connect to a different phone source, disconnect a phone, or delete a phone.
- Album Art: Select to display album art.
- Reset Music Index: This allows the music index to be reset if you are having difficulty accessing all of the media content on your device.

  Touch Yes or No.

Climate

Touch and the following may display:

- Auto Fan Speed: This setting specifies the amount of airflow when the climate control fan setting is Auto Fan.

  Touch Low, Medium, or High.
- Auto Heated Seats: This setting automatically turns on and regulates the heated seats when the cabin temperature is cool. The auto-heated seats can be turned off by using the heated seat controls.

  Touch the controls on the infotainment display to disable or enable.
- Auto Demist: This setting automatically turns the front demister on when the engine is started.

  Touch the controls on the infotainment display to disable or enable.
- Auto Rear Demist: This setting automatically turns the rear window demister on when the engine is started.

  Touch the controls on the infotainment display to disable or enable.

Navigation

Touch and the following may display:

- Routing Options
- Map Configuration
- Set Up My Places
- Navigation Voice Control
- Map Colours
- Alert Preferences
- History
- About

See *Using the Navigation System* ⇨ *160*.

Phone

Touch and the following may display:

- My Number: Displays the mobile phone number of the Bluetooth connected device.
- Active Call View: Shows active call display when answering a call.

  Touch the options on the infotainment display to disable or enable.
- Privacy: Only show call alerts in the instrument cluster.

  Touch Off or On.
- Sort Contacts: Touch to sort by first or last name.
- Re-sync Device Contacts: This allows the device contacts to re-sync if you are having difficulty accessing all of the contacts on your mobile phone.
- Delete All Vehicle Contacts: Touch to delete all vehicle stored contacts.

Personal

If equipped, this menu allows different user profile settings to be added. See “Users” in *Using the System* ⇨ *147*.

The menu may contain the following:

Name

Touch to edit your user name that will be displayed in the vehicle.

Profile Picture

Touch to choose or change your profile picture.

Profile Identifiers

Touch to have the vehicle recognise the identifier you choose.

Touch Vehicle Key 1 and/or Vehicle Key 2.

If the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is lost or stolen, see your dealer.

Security

Touch to have your profile secured with a PIN. Touch No or Yes.

Delete Profile

Touch to remove the profile from the vehicle. Touch Remove or Cancel.

Trademarks and Licence Agreements

Made for iPod iPhone

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance. iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle, and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Bluetooth

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Schedule I: Gracenote EULA

gracenote

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information see www.gracenote.com.

Music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote may apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

Gracenote Terms of Use

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to do disc or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote

Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT.

GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© 2014. Gracenote, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

MPEG4–AVC (H.264)

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD ("AVC VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

VC-1

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD ("VC-1 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

MPEG4–Visual

USE OF THIS PRODUCT IN ANY MANNER THAT COMPLIES WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD IS PROHIBITED, EXCEPT FOR USE BY A CONSUMER ENGAGING IN PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITIES.

MP3

MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.

WMV/WMA

This product includes technology owned by Microsoft Corporation and under a licence from Microsoft Licensing, GP. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a licence from Microsoft Corporation and/or Microsoft Licensing, GP as applicable.

Map End User License Agreement (Optional Equipment Applies Where Equipped)

END USER TERMS

The Map Data SD card (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this “End User License Agreement”) and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and HERE North America, LLC (“HERE”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Personal Use Only: You agree to use this Data for the solely personal, noncommercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws. You may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if you retain no copies and the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement. Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by HERE and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, mobile phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning

This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used, and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty

This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations, or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

Disclaimer of Warranty

THE DATABASE IS PROVIDED ON AN “AS IS” AND “WITH ALL FAULTS BASIS” AND HARMAN (AND THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, ACCURACY, TITLE AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN ADVICE OR INFORMATION PROVIDED BY HARMAN (OR ANY OF THEIR LICENSORS, AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS) SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY, AND YOU ARE NOT ENTITLED TO RELY ON ANY SUCH ADVICE OR INFORMATION. THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES IS AN ESSENTIAL CONDITION OF THIS AGREEMENT.

Disclaimer of Liability

HERE AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF HERE OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories, and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations. Entire Agreement: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between HERE (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect

to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims, and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER)

NAME:

HERE North America, LLC

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to the End User License Agreement under which this Data was provided.

© 2014 HERE North America, LLC. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Unicode

Copyright © 1991-2010 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html.

Free Type Project

Portions of this software are copyright © 2010 The FreeType Project (http://www.freetype.org). All rights reserved.

Open Source SW

Further information concerning the OSS licences is shown in the infotainment display.

QNX

Portions of this software are copyright © 2008-2011, QNX Software Systems. All rights reserved.

Part C – EULA

Copyright 2011, Software Systems GmbH & Co. KG. All Rights Reserved.

The product you have purchased ("Product") contains Software (Runtime Configuration No. 505962; "Software") which is distributed by or on behalf of the Product manufacturer "Manufacturer") under license from Software Systems Co. ("QSSC"). You may only use the Software in the Product and in compliance with the license terms below.

Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, QSSC hereby grants you a limited, non-exclusive, non-transferable license to use the Software in the Product for the purpose intended by the Manufacturer. If permitted by the Manufacturer, or by applicable law, you may make one backup copy of the Software as part of the Product software. QSSC and its licensors reserve all license+C31 rights not expressly granted herein, and retain all right, title and interest in and to all copies of the Software, including all intellectual property rights therein. Unless required by applicable law you may not reproduce, distribute or transfer, or de-compile, disassemble or otherwise attempt to unbundle, reverse engineer, modify or create derivative works of, the Software. You agree: (1) not to remove, cover or alter any proprietary notices, labels or marks in or on the Software, and to ensure that all copies bear any notice contained on the original; and (2) not to export the Product or the Software in contravention of applicable export control laws.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW, QSSC AND ITS LICENSORS PROVIDE THE SOFTWARE ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. ANY WARRANTIES OR OTHER PROVISIONS OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) THAT DIFFER FROM THIS LICENSE ARE OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) ALONE AND NOT BY QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS. YOU ASSUME ANY RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE UNDER THIS LICENSE.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW (SUCH AS IN THE CASE OF DELIBERATE OR GROSSLY NEGLIGENT ACTS), IN NO EVENT SHALL QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS BE LIABLE TO YOU

UNDER ANY LEGAL THEORY, WHETHER IN TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), CONTRACT OR OTHERWISE, FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY CHARACTER ARISING AS A RESULT OF THIS LICENSE OR OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF GOODWILL, WORK STOPPAGE, PRODUCT FAILURE OR MALFUNCTION, OR ANY AND ALL OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES), EVEN IF QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

WMA

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

For more information on the Software, including any open source software license terms (and available source code) as well as copyright attributions applicable to the Runtime Configuration indicated above, please contact the Manufacturer or contact QSSC at 175 Terence Matthews Crescent, Kanata, Ontario, Canada K2M 1W8 (licensing@qnx.com).

Linotype

Helvetica is a trademark of Linotype Corp. registered in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and may be registered in certain other jurisdictions in the name of Linotype Corp. or its licensee Linotype GmbH.

Usage in text form of each of the Licensed Trademarks is:

The trademark attribution requirements for the Licensed Trademarks may be viewed at http://www.linotype.com/2061-19414/trademarks.html.

END USER NOTICE

The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners. The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems
Electronic Climate Control System 196

Air Vents
Adjustable Air Vents 202
Fixed Air Vents 202

Maintenance
Air Intake 203
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 203
Service 203

Climate Control Systems

Electronic Climate Control System

The dual zone climate control system allows individual temperature settings for the driver and front passenger sides.

In automatic mode, temperature, fan speed and air distribution are regulated automatically.

Controls

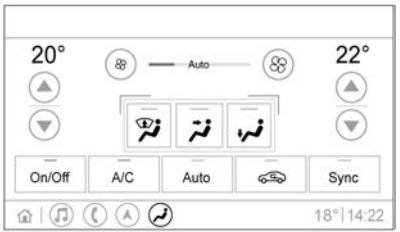
Depending on vehicle model, the following features may be available:

- Control dial for driver temperature adjustment.
- Control dial for front passenger temperature adjustment.
- **CLIMATE** : Enters the Climate Setting menu in the infotainment display.
- or : Fan speed increase and decrease.
- **ON/OFF** : Turns the climate control system on or off.
- **AUTO** : Automatic mode.
- : Manual air recirculation.
- MAX : Windscreen demisting and defrosting.
- REAR : Heated rear window and exterior mirrors.
- : Heated seats.
- : Ventilated seats.

Activated functions are indicated by an LED.

The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

Climate Setting Menu



Press the **CLIMATE** button or touch **Climate** on the infotainment system home page to display the Climate Setting menu in the infotainment display.

Depending on vehicle options, the following settings may be available:

- Climate control system on or off **ON/OFF**.
- Air conditioning on or off **A/C**.
- Automatic mode **AUTO**.
- Recirculation mode .
- Dual zone temperature synchronisation **Sync**.
- Air distribution , , .
- Fan speed .
- Temperature for driver and front passenger side, e.g. 20°/22°.

Press the touch-screen buttons.

Setting changes via the air conditioner controls are indicated in a pop-up in the infotainment display.

Automatic Mode

Basic settings for automatic control with maximum comfort:

- Press **AUTO**. Air distribution and fan speed are regulated automatically.
- Open all air vents to allow optimised air distribution in automatic mode.
- Cooling must be activated in the Climate Setting menu for optimal cooling and demisting. Press **CLIMATE** to enter the menu and press the touch button to switch on air conditioning (A/C).

- Set the preselected temperatures separately for the driver and front passenger using the left and right control dials. The temperature is indicated briefly in the displays beside the control dials and in the Climate Setting menu.

Manual Settings

Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the following functions as described below.

Fan Speed

Press the upper button or lower button to increase or decrease fan speed. The fan speed is indicated as pop-up in the infotainment display.

Fan speed can also be changed by the touch buttons in the Climate Setting menu. Press **CLIMATE** to enter the menu. Touching the left button for longer turns the fan and cooling off.

To return to automatic mode press **AUTO**.

Air Distribution

Press **CLIMATE** to enter the menu.

Touch:

: Windscreen and front door windows.

: Head area and rear seats via adjustable air vents.

: Front and rear foot well and windscreen.

To return to automatic air distribution press **AUTO**.

Temperature Preselection

Set the preselected temperatures separately for the driver and front passenger to the desired value using the left and right control dials.

- The dial on the passenger side changes the temperature for the front passenger side.
- The dial on the driver's side changes the temperature for the driver's side, or for both sides, depending on whether synchronisation (SYNC) is activated.

Temperature is indicated in the displays beside the control dials and as pop-up in the infotainment display.

If the minimum temperature **Lo** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling if the A/C is on.

If the maximum temperature **Hi** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum heating.

Note

If A/C is switched on, reducing the set cabin temperature can cause the engine to restart from an Autostop or inhibit an Autostop. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *209*.

Dual Zone Temperature Synchronisation

Press **CLIMATE** to enter the Climate Setting menu. Touch **SYNC** to link the front passenger's side temperature setting to the driver's side.

- If the driver's side control dial is adjusted, both sides will be set at the same temperature.
- If the front passenger side control dial is adjusted, synchronisation is deactivated and individual temperatures can be set.

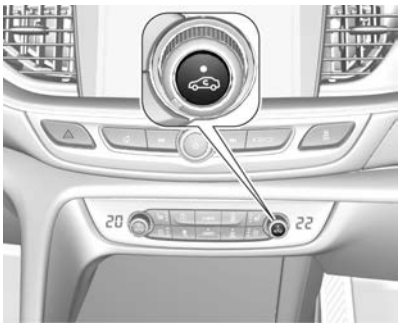
Air Conditioning (A/C)

Press **CLIMATE** to enter the Climate Setting menu and touch the **A/C** button to turn the air conditioning on or off.

Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and the climate control system fan is operating.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when the outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore, condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle. This is normal.

Manual Air Recirculation



Press to activate air recirculation mode. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Press again to deactivate air recirculation mode.

⚠ Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. The quality of passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

When operating without air conditioning, air humidity increases and mist may form inside the windows.

In warm and very humid ambient conditions, mist may form on the outside of the windscreen when cold air is directed towards it. If this occurs, activate the windscreen wipers and deactivate .

Automatic Air Recirculation

If equipped, an air humidity sensor automatically sets the system to external air if internal air humidity is too high.

Window Demisting and Defrosting

Press MAX. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

- Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs at high speed.
- Switch on the air conditioning **A/C** in the setting menu by pressing **CLIMATE**, if required.

Switch on heated rear window REAR.

- To return to previous mode press REAR again. To return to automatic mode press **AUTO**.

See *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ *46*.

Note

If REAR is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until REAR is pressed again.

If REAR is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *209*.

Climate Control System Deactivation or Activation

Air conditioning, fan and automatic mode can be switched off by pressing **ON/OFF**.

When the system is deactivated, the LED in the ON/OFF button is not illuminated.

Activate the system by pressing **ON/OFF** again or **AUTO**. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Basic Settings

The following settings can be changed:

- Fan speed regulation in automatic mode.
- Automatic rear window heating.
- Automatic windscreen dehumidification.
- Automatic seat heating.

See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Heated Exterior Mirrors

See *Heated Mirrors* ⇨ *42*.

Heated Seats

See *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *59*, *Heated Rear Seats* ⇨ *64*.

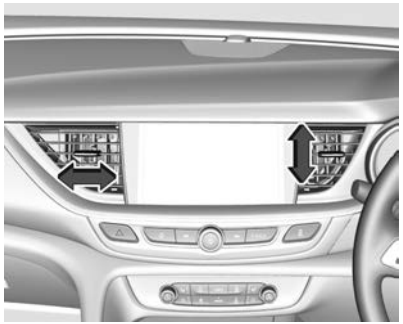
Ventilated Seats

See *Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *59*.

Air Vents

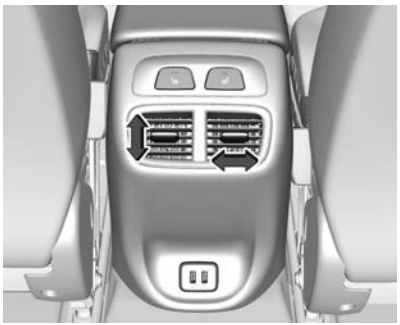
Adjustable Air Vents

At least one air vent must be open while the climate control system is on.



Centre air vents in the instrument panel.

Outer vents in the instrument panel.



Air vents for rear passengers.

Direct air flow by tilting and swivelling the slats. To close the vent, swivel the slats sideways.

⚠ Warning

Do not attach objects to the vents. Damage or injury may occur.

Fixed Air Vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen and door windows and in the footwells.

Maintenance

Air Intake

The air intake in front of the windscreen in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake.

Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

Cabin Air Filter

Change the cabin air filter according to the maintenance schedule for maximum effect. Refer to your Service and Warranty booklet.

Note

If driving in dusty conditions, the cabin air filter may require more frequent maintenance. Contact a dealer.

Air Conditioning Regular Operation

To ensure continuously efficient performance, the air conditioner must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year.

Service

For optimal cooling performance, have the climate control system serviced according to the maintenance schedule. Refer to your Service and Warranty booklet.

Driving and Operating

Driving Information
Driving Environment 205

Starting and Operating
New Vehicle Break-In 206
Power Button 206
Starting the Engine 207
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 208
Overrun Cut-Off 209
Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature 209
Parking 211

Engine Exhaust
Engine Exhaust 212
Catalytic Converter 212

Diesel Particulate Filter
Diesel Particulate Filter 212

AdBlue
AdBlue (Diesel) 214

Automatic Transmission
Automatic Transmission 217
Transmission Display 217
Shift Lever 217
Manual Mode 219
Electronic Driving Programs 220
Fault 221
Interruption of Power Supply 221

Drive Systems
All-Wheel Drive 222

Brakes
Brakes 223
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 223
Electric Parking Brake 224
Brake Assist 225
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 225

Ride Control Systems
Traction Control System (TCS) 226
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 227
Interactive Drive Control System 228

Driver Assistance Systems
Driver Assistance Systems . . . 230
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) . . . 231
Surround Vision System 234
Parking Assist 237
Advanced Parking Assist 240
Cruise Control 245
Speed Limiter 247
Adaptive Cruise Control 249
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 256
Following Distance Indication System 258
Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) 259
Front Pedestrian Protection System 263
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) 265
Lane Change Alert (LCA) 266
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 268

Fuel
Fuel 270
Recommended Fuel 272
Filling the Tank 274

Trailer Towing
Trailer Towing 276
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) . . . 279

Conversions and Add-Ons
Add-On Electrical Equipment 280

Driving Information

Driving Environment

Before Entering the Vehicle

Check the windows, mirrors and lamps are clean.

Visually check tyre inflation. Check tyre pressures weekly.

Before Driving Off

1. Close and secure all doors.
2. Position the seat for comfortable driving.
3. Adjust the rear view mirrors.
4. Fasten the seat belts.
5. Check the instrument cluster indicators illuminate when turning the ignition on and go off once the engine is started. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *100*.

Control of the Vehicle

Never Coast with the Engine Not Running

Many systems will not function in this situation, e.g. brake servo unit, power steering.

Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others.

Idle Boost

If charging of the vehicle battery is required due to the battery's condition, the power output of the alternator must be increased. This may be achieved by an idle boost which may be audible.

Floor Mats

To ensure that pedal travel is uninhibited, use only floor mats which fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver's side.

⚠ Warning

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the accelerator pedal and/or brake pedal. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury.

Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal.

Steering

If power steering assistance is lost because the engine stops or due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort.

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In

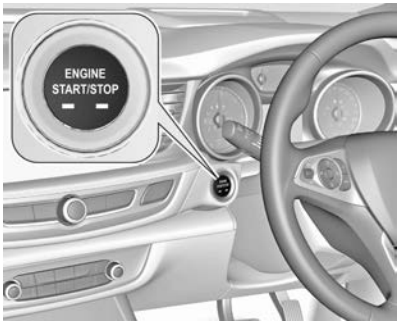
During the first 1000 km of driving use moderate acceleration, do not make full-throttle starts and do not drive at any one constant speed. Do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

During the first drive, odours may be noticed due to protective wax and oil evaporating off the exhaust system. Park the vehicle in the open for a while after the first drive and avoid inhaling the fumes.

During the running-in period, fuel and engine oil consumption may be slightly higher. Additionally, the diesel particle filter's cleaning process may occur more often. See *Diesel Particulate Filter* ⇨ *212*.

Autostops may be inhibited to allow for charging of the vehicle battery, etc. See *Automatic Engine Start/ Stop Feature* ⇨ *209*.

Power Button



Pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button cycles the ignition through the following Modes. The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter must be inside the vehicle.

Accessory Power Mode

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button once without pressing the brake pedal.

The yellow LED in the button illuminates and the steering wheel lock is released. Some electrical functions are operable, the ignition is off.

Ignition-on Power Mode

Press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for six seconds without pressing the brake pedal.

The green LED in the button illuminates; diesel engine is preheating. Instrument cluster indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

Engine Start

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button briefly while pressing the brake pedal with the shift lever in **P** (Park) or **N** (Neutral). See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *207*.

Ignition-off

When the vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake and engage **P** (Park).

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button briefly. Some functions remain active until the driver’s door is opened.

Emergency Engine Shut-off During Driving

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button for more than two seconds, or press twice briefly within five seconds. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *207*.

Steering Wheel Lock

The steering wheel lock activates automatically when:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The ignition has been turned off.
- The driver's door is opened.

To release the steering wheel lock, open and close driver's door and turn on Accessory Mode or start the engine directly.

Operation in Case of Failure

If the RKE transmitter battery is depleted or the transmitter fails, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) may display a **No Remote Detected** or **Replace Battery in Remote Key** message when you try to start the vehicle.

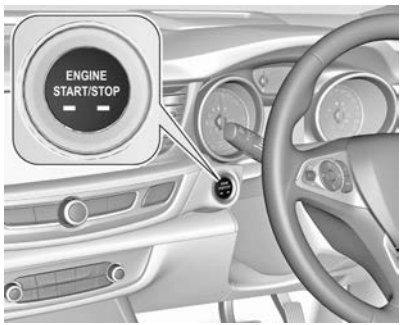
1. Open the cover of the centre console in front of the shift lever.
2. Place the RKE transmitter in the transmitter pocket beside the power outlet, with the buttons facing up as shown.

   Other objects, e.g. other keys, transponders, tags, coins, etc. must be removed from the pocket.
3. Press the brake pedal and press the ENGINE START/STOP button.

To turn off the engine, press the ENGINE START/STOP button again and remove the RKE transmitter from the transmitter pocket.

This option is intended for emergencies only. Replace the RKE transmitter battery as soon as possible, see *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *22*. For unlocking or locking the doors, see *Door Locks* ⇨ *27*.

Starting the Engine



Press the brake pedal and move the shift lever to **P** (Park) or **N** (Neutral).

Do not operate the accelerator pedal.

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button briefly: an automatic starter control procedure operates with a short delay until the engine is running.

To switch off the engine when vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake and engage **P**. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button briefly.

Note

If **P** is not engaged a chime will sound.

Emergency Engine Shut-off During Driving

If the engine needs to be turned off during driving in an emergency situation, press the ENGINE START/STOP button for more than two seconds or press twice briefly within five seconds.

⚠ Danger

Turning the engine off whilst driving may cause loss of power assistance to the brake and steering systems. Driver assistance systems and airbag systems are disabled. Lighting and tail lamps will extinguish.

Therefore shut off the engine and ignition while driving only in case of an emergency.

Automatic Starter Control

This function controls the engine starting procedure. The driver does not need to hold the ENGINE START/STOP button pressed.

Once applied, the system will continue starting automatically until the engine is running or for a certain period of time.

Due to a checking procedure, there may be a short delay until the engine starts.

Possible reasons for a non-starting engine include:

- The brake pedal is not pressed or the shift lever is not in **P** or **N**.
- Time-out occurred.

Turbo Engine Warm-up

Upon engine start-up, the available engine torque may be limited for a short time, especially when the engine temperature is cold. This limitation is to allow the lubrication system to fully protect the engine.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

The following electronic systems can operate until the driver's door is opened, or for 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off:

- Power windows.
- Sunroof.
- Power outlets.

Overrun Cut-Off

The fuel supply to the engine is automatically cut-off during an overrun, e.g. when driving down a hill with the shift lever in D and the accelerator pedal released.

Depending on driving conditions, the overrun cut-off may be deactivated.

Automatic Engine Start/ Stop Feature

The engine start-stop system helps to save fuel and reduce the exhaust emissions.

When conditions allow, it performs an Autostop and turns off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light. The ignition remains on.

Activation

The engine start-stop system is available as soon as the engine is started, the vehicle starts-off and the conditions stated further in this section are fulfilled.

Deactivation

The engine start-stop system can be deactivated manually by pressing Ⓐ **OFF**. Deactivation is indicated when the LED in the button illuminates.

Autostop

Indication

An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the AUTOSTOP position in the tachometer. After restarting, the engine speed is indicated.

During an Autostop, heating and brake performance will be maintained.

Conditions for an Autostop

The engine start-stop system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled.

- The engine start-stop system is not manually deactivated.
- The bonnet is fully closed.
- The driver's door is closed and the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition.
- The engine is warmed up.
- The engine coolant temperature is not too high.
- The engine exhaust temperature is not too high, e.g. after driving with high engine load.
- The ambient temperature is above -5 °C.
- The climate control system allows an Autostop.
- The brake vacuum is sufficient.
- The self-cleaning function of the diesel particulate filter is not active.
- The vehicle was driven at least at walking speed since the last Autostop.

Otherwise an Autostop will be inhibited.

Certain settings of the climate control system may inhibit an Autostop. Immediately after freeway driving, an Autostop may be inhibited.

Vehicle Battery Discharge Protection

To ensure reliable engine restarts, several battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the engine start-stop system.

Power Saving Measures

During an Autostop, several electrical features, such as the heated rear window, are disabled or switched to a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system may also be reduced to save power.

Restart of the Engine by the Driver

Release the brake pedal or move shift lever out of **D** into **N** or **P** to restart the engine.

Restart of the Engine by the Engine Start-Stop System

The shift lever must be in **D** (Drive) to enable an automatic restart. If one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically by the engine start-stop system:

- The engine start-stop system is manually deactivated.
- The bonnet is opened.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
- The engine temperature is too low.
- The charging level of the vehicle battery is below a defined level.
- The brake vacuum is not sufficient.

- The vehicle is being driven at least at walking speed.
- The climate control system requests an engine start.
- The air conditioning is manually switched on.

If the bonnet is not fully closed, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

If an electrical accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to a power outlet, a brief power drop during the restart might be noticeable.

Parking

1. Apply the electric park brake. Check the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.
2. Select **P** (Park).
3. Close all windows.
4. Turn the ignition off, remove the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter and exit the vehicle.

Note

For vehicles with a turbocharger: After running at high engine speed or with high engine loads, allow the engine to idle in **P** or **N** for approx. 30 seconds before turning off. This will help protect the turbocharger.

5. Press the button on the RKE transmitter, or press the lock/unlock button on a door handle (with the RKE transmitter within 1 m of the door handle) to lock all doors.

Note

The engine fan may keep running for several minutes after the ignition has been turned off. This is normal.

⚠ Warning

Be careful where you park or drive. As with any vehicle, do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where combustible

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

materials such as dry grass or leaves can come in contact with a hot exhaust system.

Exhaust gases are hazardous, especially if they concentrate in closed rooms.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed space such as a closed garage or underground car park.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ Danger

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows. Have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer.

Avoid driving with an open tailgate, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

Catalytic Converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer as soon as possible.

Caution

Fuel grades other than those listed in this manual could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components.

Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

Diesel Particulate Filter

The diesel particulate filter system removes harmful soot particulates from the exhaust gases.

Automatic Cleaning Process

The system includes a self-cleaning function that runs automatically during driving without any notification.

The filter is cleaned by periodically burning off the soot particulates at high temperature. This process takes place automatically under set driving conditions and may take up to 25 minutes. Typically it requires between 7 and 12 minutes.

Autostop is not available and fuel consumption may be higher during this period.

An odour and smoke may be given off during this process. This is normal.

System Requires Cleaning Process

Under certain driving conditions, e.g. short distances, the system cannot clean itself automatically. If cleaning of the filter is required and if previous driving conditions did not enable automatic cleaning, it will be indicated by illumination of in the instrument cluster and a warning message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

- illuminates along with a warning message when the diesel particulate filter is full. Start the cleaning process as soon as possible.
- flashes along with a warning message when the diesel particulate filter has reached the maximum filling level. Start the cleaning process immediately to avoid damage to the engine.

Activate Self-cleaning Process

To activate the cleaning process, continue driving and keep the engine speed above 2000 rpm. Shift down if necessary.

Diesel particulate filter cleaning is then started. The fastest cleaning is achieved at high engine speeds and loads.

extinguishes as soon as the self-cleaning operation is complete. Keep driving until the self-cleaning operation is complete.

Caution
If possible, do not interrupt the cleaning process. Drive until cleaning is completed to avoid the need for service or repair.

Cleaning Process Not Possible

If cleaning is not possible, illuminates and a warning message appears in the DIC. Engine power may be reduced.

Seek the assistance of a dealer immediately.

AdBlue

AdBlue (Diesel)

General Information

The selective catalytic reduction system is a method for substantially reducing nitrogen oxides in exhaust emissions. This is achieved by injecting a diesel exhaust fluid into the exhaust system. The fluid reacts with nitrous gases (NOx) from the exhaust and converts it to harmless nitrogen and water.

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) is commonly known as AdBlue®. It is a non-hazardous, non-flammable and colourless fluid.

⚠ Warning

Avoid contact of AdBlue with your eyes or skin. In a case of eye or skin contact, rinse off with water.

Caution

Avoid AdBlue contacting the paintwork. In case of contact, immediately rinse off with water.

The typical AdBlue consumption is approx. two litres per 1000 km, but can also be higher depending on driving behaviour (e.g. high load or towing). You can purchase AdBlue and receive assistance with refilling from your dealer.

AdBlue Tank

The AdBlue tank contains level switches which monitor the amount of remaining AdBlue fluid. The AdBlue tank capacity is 15 litres.

Level Warnings

Depending on the calculated range of the AdBlue, different messages are displayed in the DIC. The messages and the restrictions are a legal requirement.

The first possible warning is **AdBlue Range: 2400 km**.

This warning will be displayed once briefly with the calculated range. Driving is possible without any restrictions, however refilling should be done when possible.

The next warning level is entered with a range below 1750 km. The message with the current range will always be displayed when ignition is switched on and needs to be confirmed by pressing **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever or ✓ on the steering wheel. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *116*.

The AdBlue tank should be refilled as soon as possible.

At an AdBlue range of 900 km, the following warning messages are alternately displayed in the DIC and cannot be dismissed:

- **AdBlue Low Refill Now**
- **Engine Restart Prevented in 900 km**

Furthermore, the estimated AdBlue range will continue to decrease from 900 km. The AdBlue tank should be refilled immediately to avoid engine restart prevention.

Additionally, the instrument cluster indicator flashes continuously.

Note

In case of high AdBlue consumption, the DIC may display this warning without the previous warning stages.

The last warning level is entered when the AdBlue tank is empty. Restarting the engine is not possible. The following warning messages are alternately displayed and cannot be dismissed:

- **AdBlue Empty Refill Now**
- **Engine Will Not Restart**

Additionally, instrument cluster indicator illuminates continuously.

With active prevention of an engine start, the following message will be displayed: **Refill AdBlue To Start Vehicle**

The AdBlue tank must be refilled completely, otherwise restarting of the engine is not possible.

Note

After refilling, it may take several minutes of driving for the DIC messages to reset.

High Emission Warnings

If exhaust emissions rise above a certain value, warnings will be displayed in the DIC.

Have your vehicle checked by your dealer to avoid engine restart prevention.

These restrictions are a legal requirement.

Refilling AdBlue

⚠ Warning

Never add AdBlue directly to the fuel tank.

If AdBlue is added to the fuel tank, do not drive the vehicle or start the engine. Contact your dealer immediately.

Caution

Only use AdBlue that complies with ISO standard 22241-1.

Do not use additives or dilute AdBlue, otherwise the selective catalytic reduction system could be damaged.

Use only AdBlue containers with an adapter for refilling to prevent splash-back and overspill. AdBlue is available from reputable fuel and

automotive outlets, or from your dealer, who can also assist with refilling.

For the AdBlue tank capacity see *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *349*.

Note

- It is not recommended to refill at the AdBlue pumps that exist at many fuel stations as they are for commercial vehicles (trucks and buses). The flow-rate will be too high and the nozzle may not fit your vehicle.
- Since AdBlue has a limited shelf-life; check the date of expiry before refilling.
- AdBlue freezes at a temperature of approx. -11 °C. Do not attempt to fill at temperatures below 0 °C.

The refilling of the AdBlue tank is only detected by the system when the liquid level switches in the tank are activated.

If the AdBlue refill is not successfully detected:

1. Continuously drive the vehicle for 10 minutes making sure the vehicle speed is always higher than 20 km/h.
2. If the AdBlue refill is detected successfully, the AdBlue level-driven messages and limitations will disappear.

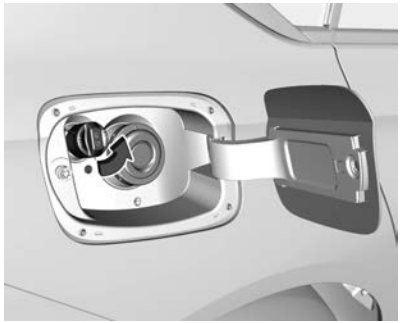
If the AdBlue refill is still not detected once full, contact your dealer.

Note

When removing the AdBlue filler cap, avoid inhalation of any odours.

The AdBlue tank filler neck is located behind the fuel filler door, which can only be opened when the vehicle is unlocked.

1. The vehicle must be parked on a level surface.
2. Turn the ignition off.
3. Close all doors to avoid odours entering the vehicle.
4. Release the fuel filler door by pushing the rear edge of the door.



5. Unscrew the AdBlue filler cap.
6. Open the AdBlue container.
7. Install the filler hose that came with the AdBlue container.
8. Lift the Adblue container and insert the filler hose into the AdBlue Filler port.
9. Raise the container until Adblue flows into your vehicle. Continue until the container is empty, or until the flow from the container has stopped. This can take several minutes.

10. Place the container on the ground to empty the hose, wait 15 seconds.
11. Unscrew the hose from the filler neck.
12. Refit the AdBlue filler cap securely.

Note

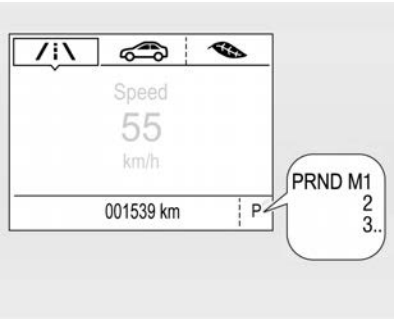
- Dispose of the AdBlue container and hose according to environmental requirements. The hose can be reused after flushing with clear water before the AdBlue dries out.
- It is recommended to store your AdBlue containers in a dry environment that is less than 30 °C and away from direct sunlight. It is not advisable, therefore, to store containers in your vehicle.

Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission permits automatic gear shifting (automatic mode) or manual gear shifting (manual mode).

Manual shifting is possible in manual mode by tapping the shift lever to **+** or **-**, or if equipped, pulling the steering wheel paddles.

Transmission Display



Depending on vehicle model, the transmission mode or selected gear is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) or lower portion of the instrument cluster.

In automatic mode, the driving program is indicated by **D**.

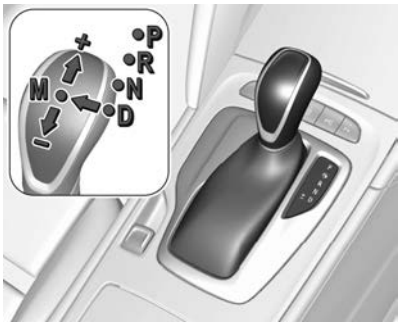
In manual mode, **M** and the number of the selected gear is indicated.

R : indicates reverse gear.

N : indicates neutral position.

P : indicates park position.

Shift Lever



P : Park position. Wheels are locked. Engage only when the vehicle is stationary

R : Reverse gear. Engage only when the vehicle is stationary

N : Neutral

D : Automatic mode

M : Manual mode

+ : Upshift in manual mode

− : Downshift in manual mode

Caution

Selecting position **P** while the vehicle is still moving can cause damage to the transmission.

Do not press the accelerator pedal with the brakes applied in any gear except position **P** or **N**. This will overheat the transmission.

The shift lever is locked in **P** and can only be moved when the ignition is on, the release button on the shift lever is pushed and the brake pedal is applied.

Without the brake pedal applied, illuminates. If the shift lever is not in **P** when the ignition is turned off, flashes.

To engage **P** or **R**, press the release button.

The engine can only be started with lever in position **P** or **N**. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *207*

Do not accelerate while engaging a gear. Never press the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.

When a gear is engaged, the vehicle begins to creep when the brake pedal is released.

⚠ Warning

To prevent the vehicle from moving when position **N** is selected, always apply the park brake, press the foot brake or use suitable chocks to block the wheels.

Do not coast the vehicle in position **N** – this decreases your control and ability to accelerate quickly in an emergency.

Caution
Do not use the accelerator pedal to hold the vehicle stationary on an uphill gradient. Use the brakes.

Engine Braking

To utilise the engine braking effect, select a lower gear when driving downhill. See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *219*.

Rocking the Vehicle

Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow. Move the shift lever between **D** and **R** in a repeated pattern.

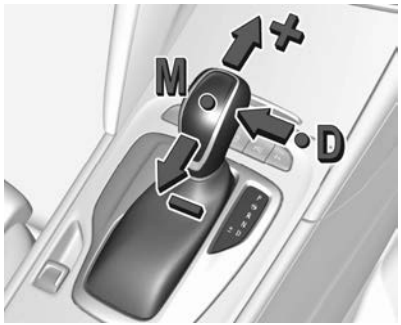
Do not race the engine and avoid sudden acceleration.

Parking

Apply the parking brake and engage **P**. Ensure Ⓟ is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

Manual Mode

Shift Lever



Move the shift lever out of position **D** towards the left into position **M**.

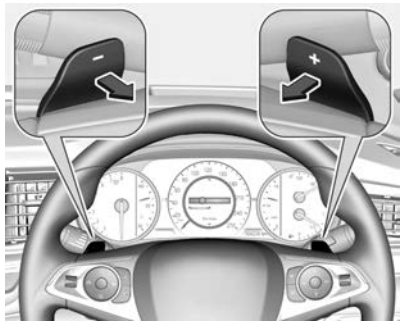
Manual mode **M** can be activated from position **D** in any driving situation and speed.

- Tap the shift lever upwards **+** to shift to a higher gear.
- Tap the shift lever downwards **-** to shift to a lower gear.

The selected gear is indicated in the instrument cluster.

Steering Wheel Paddles

The vehicle may have steering wheel paddles.



Move the shift lever out of position **D** towards the left into position **M**.

Manual mode **M** can be activated from position **D** in any driving situation and speed.

Pull steering wheel paddles to select gears manually.

- Pull the right paddle **+** to shift to a higher gear.
- Pull the left paddle **-** to shift to a lower gear.

Multiple pulls allow gears to be skipped.

The selected gear is indicated in the instrument cluster.

Temporary Manual Mode in Drive Mode D

Manual paddle shifting is also possible in automatic mode **D**. Upon completion of manual shifting operation, the transmission changes to automatic mode **D** after a defined time.

To interrupt manual mode and return to **D**, do one of the following:

- Press the **+** paddle until the system returns to D mode.
- Move the shift lever left into manual mode and then back to position **D**.

If the vehicle is at a standstill and the engine is idling, the transmission will remain in temporary manual mode. It changes to automatic mode when accelerator pedal is operated for a defined time and no paddle shifting is performed.

General

If a higher gear is selected when the vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when the vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This can cause a message to be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

In manual mode, no automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions, except when the kick-down function is activated.

Gear Shift Indication

The symbol ▲ or ▼ with a number beside it is indicated when gear shifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

Shift indication appears only in manual mode.

Electronic Driving Programs

- Following a cold start, the operating temperature program increases engine speed to quickly bring the catalytic converter to the required temperature. Manual first gear selection may not be possible until normal operating temperature is reached.
- When SPORT mode is engaged, the vehicle may shift at higher engine speeds (unless cruise control is on). See *Interactive Drive Control System* ⇨ *228*.
- Special programs automatically adapt the shifting points when driving up inclines or down hills.
- In snowy or icy conditions or on other slippery surfaces, the electronic transmission control enables the driver to manually select first, second or third gear for starting off.

Kickdown

Pressing down the accelerator pedal beyond the kick-down detent will lead to maximum acceleration.

The transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on engine speed and shifts to a higher gear at high engine revolutions.

Overheat Protection

In the event of the transmission overheating due to high outside temperatures or sporty driving style, the torque and the maximum speed of the engine may be temporarily reduced.

Fault

In the event of a transmission fault, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

If a fault is detected, the electronic transmission control enables only one gear and the transmission will no longer shift automatically.

Have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer.

Interruption of Power Supply

In the event of an interruption to the power supply, the shift lever cannot be moved out of the **P** position.

If the vehicle battery is flat, start the vehicle using jump leads. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *331*.

If the vehicle battery is not the cause of the fault, release the shift lever as follows.

1. Apply the parking brake.

2. Release the rear of the shift lever trim from the centre console.

   Insert a finger into the leather pocket below the shift lever and lift the trim upwards.

   Rotate the trim to the left.

3. Insert an object such as a pen or screwdriver into the opening near the shift lever.

   Push down to disengage the locking mechanism and move the shift lever out of **P**.

If this position is engaged again, the shift lever will be locked again.

4. Place the shift lever trim into position on the centre console and refit.

Have the cause of the power supply interruption rectified by a dealer.

Drive Systems

All-Wheel Drive

The all-wheel drive system enhances driving characteristics and stability, and helps to achieve optimum driveability.

The system is always active and cannot be deactivated. Engine torque is steplessly distributed between the front and rear wheels up to split of 50% / 50%.

Depending on driving conditions, e.g. steady driving, the all-wheel drive system transfers a minimum amount of torque for fuel efficiency.

Additionally, torque vectoring between the rear wheels is distributed automatically depending on vehicle dynamics and the road surface. This is due to the all-wheel drive system incorporating two clutches, one each side.

Note

For optimum system performance, the vehicle's tyres should not have varying degrees of wear or be of different sizes.

If a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre, the system may have limited functionality, or be completely disabled. If disabled, the system operates in front-wheel drive mode. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

Care is needed when towing an all-wheel drive vehicle. See *Towing the Vehicle* ⇨ *333*.

Brakes

The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.

If a brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still be braked using the other brake circuit. However, braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is pressed firmly. Considerably more force is needed for this and the braking distance is extended. Seek the assistance of a dealer before continuing the journey.

When the engine is not running, the support of the brake servo unit remains only for a few brake pedal applications. Braking effect is not reduced, but braking requires significantly greater force. If a problem is detected, (!) illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

The Antilock Brake System (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.

ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains controllable, even during hard braking.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. You should always adjust the vehicle's speed to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process. For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.

After starting off, the system performs a self-test which may be audible.

⚠ Warning

When the ignition is turned on, the (ABS) warning light briefly illuminates. The self-check of the ABS may be audible.

If the (ABS) warning light (ABS off) on the instrument panel display does not extinguish, or illuminates when driving, a malfunction has occurred.

Note: The vehicle's brake system remains operational, but without ABS assistance. Have a Holden Dealer check the system as soon as possible.

Adaptive Brake Light

During full braking, all three brake lights flash for the duration of ABS control.

Electric Parking Brake

The vehicle has an Electric Parking Brake (EPB).

Before turning the ignition off and leaving the vehicle, always check Ⓟ is constantly illuminated in the instrument cluster.

Applying When the Vehicle is Stationary

Press the brake pedal and pull the EPB switch for a minimum of one second until Ⓟ illuminates constantly and the parking brake is applied. The parking brake operates automatically with adequate force.

The EPB can always be activated, even if the ignition is off. Do not operate the EPB system too often without the engine running as this will discharge the vehicle battery.

⚠ Warning

If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

Releasing

Turn the ignition on. Keep the brake pedal pressed and then push the EPB switch.

Drive Away Function

Selecting **D** (Drive) and then pressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake automatically.

This is not possible when the EPB switch is pulled at the same time.

Dynamic Braking When the Vehicle is Moving

When the vehicle is moving and the EPB switch is kept pulled, the parking brake system will decelerate the vehicle, but will not apply statically.

As soon as the switch is released, dynamic braking will cease.

Automatic Applying

If the vehicle is equipped with adaptive cruise control, when the adaptive cruise control is active the EPB is applied automatically when vehicle is stopped by the system for more than two minutes.

The parking brake releases automatically after moving off.

See *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *249*.

Functionality Check

When the vehicle is not moving, the EPB might be applied automatically. This is done to check the system.

Fault

If Ⓟ flashes, the EPB is not fully applied or released. When continuously flashing, release the EPB and retry applying.

Failure mode of the EPB is indicated by Ⓟ illuminating in the instrument cluster and by a message displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

- To apply the EPB: Pull and hold the switch for more than five seconds. If Ⓟ illuminates, the parking brake is applied.
- To release the EPB: Push and hold the switch for more than two seconds. If Ⓟ extinguishes, the parking brake is released.

Brake Assist

If the brake pedal is pressed quickly and forcefully, maximum braking force is automatically applied.

Operation of the brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when pressing the brake pedal.

Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

The system helps prevent unintended movement when driving away on inclines.

When releasing the brake pedal after stopping on an incline, the brakes remain on for a further two seconds. The brakes release automatically as soon as the vehicle begins to accelerate.

Depending on vehicle model, the duration of the hill start assist can be changed. See “Extended Hill Start Assist” in *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control System (TCS)

The Traction Control (TC) system is a component of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system.

TC improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip, by preventing the drive wheels from spinning.

As soon as the drive wheels start to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked separately. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

TC is operational after each engine start, as soon as extinguishes in the instrument cluster.

When TC operates flashes for as long as control is being applied.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions.

Deactivation

TC can be switched off when spinning of the drive wheels is required: Press the switch briefly.

illuminates in the instrument cluster and a status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre when TC is deactivated.

When TC is deactivated, ESC remains active but with a higher control threshold.

TC is reactivated by pressing the switch again. A status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre when TC is reactivated.

TC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Fault

If there is a fault in the system illuminates continuously and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip.

As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer or oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually.

ESC operates in combination with the Traction Control (TC) system. It prevents the drive wheels from spinning.

Torque distribution is a special feature that allocates the torque to the drive wheels before the ESC intervenes. When cornering, the wheels on the inner curve are braked individually. Additionally, engine torque will be delivered to the drive wheel on the outer curve. This reduces the tendency of understeer and improves traction when cornering fast.

ESC is operational after each engine start, as soon as extinguishes in the instrument cluster. When ESC operates flashes.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions.

Deactivation

ESC and TC can be deactivated:

- Press and hold the switch for a minimum of five seconds: TC and ESC are both deactivated.

  and illuminate in the instrument cluster and messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
- To deactivate only the traction control, press the switch briefly: TC is inactive but ESC remains active.

illuminates in the instrument cluster and a status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

ESC is reactivated by pressing the switch again. If the TC system was previously disabled, both TC and ESC are reactivated. and extinguish when TC and ESC are reactivated.

ESC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Competitive Mode

VXR models have an additional ESC competitive mode.

With TC and ESC on, press the switch twice. If TC/ESC was previously off, reinstate it first. An ESC Competitive Mode message is displayed for a short period. and are illuminated to remind you that competitive mode is enabled.

Competitive mode allows performance driving whilst still maintaining control at a higher level.

Fault

If there is a fault in the system illuminates continuously and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer.

Interactive Drive Control System

Depending on vehicle model, some or all of the following features may be available.

Flex Ride

The Flex Ride driving system allows the driver to select between three driving modes by pressing the centre console switches:

- SPORT mode: Press **SPORT**, the LED in the button illuminates.
- VXR mode: Press **VXR**, the LED in the button illuminates.
- AUTO mode: neither **SPORT** or **VXR** is pressed, no LED is illuminated.

In each driving mode, depending on vehicle model, Flex Ride adjusts the following electronic systems:

- Electronic damping control
- Electronic power steering control
- Automatic transmission
- Adaptive cruise control
- All-wheel drive
- Engine sound enhancement

Sport Mode

Depending on vehicle model, the system settings are adjusted for a more dynamic driving style.

- Shock absorber damping is set up for increased handling and agility.
- Steering support is more direct.
- Automatic transmission shift points optimised for dynamic driving.
- Adaptive cruise control is adjusted.
- All-wheel drive supports active dynamic driving of the vehicle.
- Engine sound enhancement intensifies interior engine sound.

VXR Mode

The Sport Mode system settings are adjusted for maximum performance.

Auto Mode

All system settings are preset to standard values and optimised for daily driving (default mode).

This is a fully adaptive mode, adjusting systems to both comfort and sport settings depending on driving style and driving situation.

Adaptive Drive Mode Control

Within each manually selected driving mode; Sport, VXR or Auto, Drive Mode Control (DMC) detects and analyses the driving situation and the driver's driving style continuously. If necessary, DMC automatically adjusts damping and steering for the duration of the occurring situation.

If, for example, normal settings are active in Auto mode and DMC detects a sporty driving behaviour, it automatically changes the systems to sporty settings unless the driver deselects Sport Suspension or Sport Steering in the Sport Mode Customisation menu.

When the driving characteristic or the dynamic vehicle state returns to the former state, DMC will change to preselected settings.

Flex Ride Settings

The following settings can be changed in the Vehicle tab in the infotainment system Settings menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Note
Depending on vehicle model, not all settings may be available.

Sport Mode Customisation

Select Sport Mode Customisation and select the relevant settings.

- Sport Steering
- Sport Suspension
- Sport AWD
- Sport Adaptive Cruise Control

Auto-Mode Customisation

Select Auto-Mode Customisation and select the relevant settings.

- Normal: Default setting.
- Sport Sensitive: Systems change to sport settings faster while driving sporty.
- Auto Adjustment Off: Drive mode control adaptation is deactivated.

Driver Assistance Systems

This vehicle may have features that work together to help avoid crashes or reduce crash damage while driving, reversing, and parking. Please read this entire section to gain a full understanding of their capabilities and limitations before using these systems.

⚠ Warning

Do not rely on the Driver Assistance Systems. These systems do not replace the need for paying attention and driving safely. You may not hear alerts or warnings provided by these systems. Failure to use proper care when driving may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Under many conditions, these systems will not:

- Detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals.
- Detect vehicles or objects outside the area monitored by the system.
- Work at all driving speeds.
- Warn you or provide you with enough time to avoid a crash.
- Work under poor visibility or bad weather conditions.
- Work if the detection sensor is not cleaned or is covered by ice, snow, mud, or dirt.
- Work if the detection sensor is covered, such as with a sticker, magnet, etc.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Work if the area surrounding the detection sensor is damaged or not properly repaired.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

The rear vision camera assists the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle on the infotainment system display.

⚠ Warning

Never rely solely on the rear vision camera when reversing the vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

There is a blind spot that cannot be sensed by the camera.

The rear vision camera is not intended to replace the driver's judgement or attention to the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

Before entering the vehicle always check that the area around the vehicle is clear of obstacles and people.

Always perform head checks and use the vehicle's mirrors when reversing.

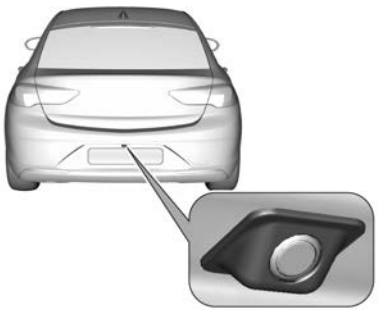
If the vehicle sustains any damage in the area of the camera (rear number plate surround), it may become misaligned. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Always keep the camera lens free from dirt, snow or ice. Only use mild soap and water with a soft cloth to clean the lens.

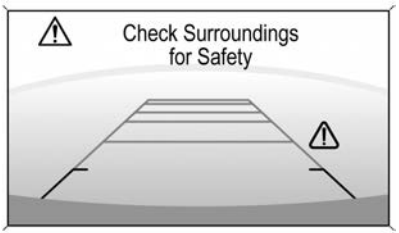
Activation

The rear vision camera is automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged.

Functionality



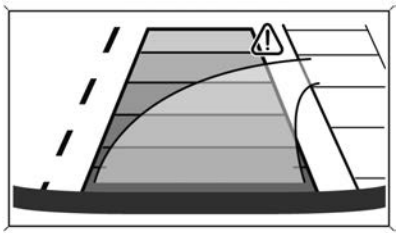
The camera is mounted between the rear number plate lights.



The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

Guide Lines

Dynamic guide lines are horizontal lines at one metre intervals projected onto the display to define the distance to displayed objects.



The trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

Warning Symbols

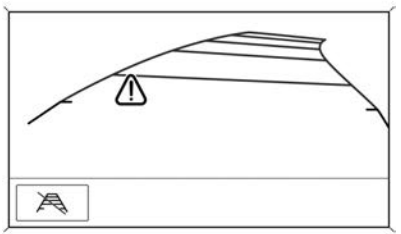
Warning symbols ⚠ are indicated on the display which show obstacles detected by the rear parking assist sensors.

Additionally ⚠ appears on the top line of the display with the warning to check the area surrounding the vehicle.

Deactivation

The camera is switched off when a certain forward speed is exceeded or if reverse gear is not engaged for approx. 10 seconds. The infotainment system display returns to the previous screen.

Deactivation of Guide Lines and Warning Symbols



Activation or deactivation of the visual guide lines and the warning symbols can be changed via the touch button in the lower area of the display.

System Limitations

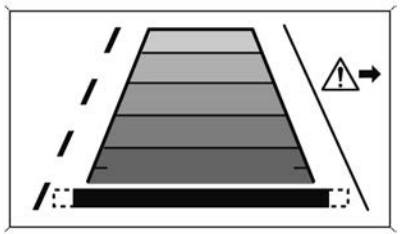
The rear vision camera may not operate properly when:

- The surrounding is dark.
- The sun or headlight beams is/ are shining directly into the camera lens.
- When driving at night.
- The weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The camera lens is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. Clean the lens, rinse with water, and wipe with a soft cloth.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- The vehicle has had a rear end collision.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

Fault messages are displayed with ⚠ on the top line of the infotainment system display.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert

Additional to the rear vision camera, rear cross traffic alert warns of cross traffic from left or right side when reversing.



When cross traffic is recognised and the rear vision camera is activated, a warning triangle ⚠ with a direction arrow is displayed, showing the direction of the traffic. Furthermore, three beeps will sound from the speaker on that side.

The radar distance sensors are located behind each side of the rear bumper.

⚠ Warning

Rear cross traffic alert does not replace driver vision. Note that objects that are outside sensors, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle, are not displayed.

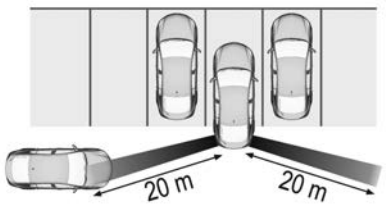
Pedestrians, children or animals are not detected.

Do not reverse the vehicle by only looking at the infotainment system display. Always check the surrounding area behind and around the vehicle before reversing.

Activation

Rear cross traffic alert is automatically activated together with the rear vision camera when reverse gear is engaged.

Detection Zones



The system sensors cover a zone of approx. 20 metres at 90° to the left or right side behind the vehicle. Rear cross traffic alert is active at up to 10 km/h and issues alerts within cross traffic travelling between 0 and 36 km/h.

Deactivation

Rear cross traffic alert is deactivated together with the rear vision camera when a certain forward speed is exceeded or if reverse gear is not engaged for approx. 10 seconds.

The rear cross traffic alert can be deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

The system is also deactivated if the vehicle is towing a trailer. Deactivation is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre.

System Limitations

The system may not operate properly when:

- Ice, snow, mud, stickers, magnets, metal plates, or anything else covers the sensors.
- Driving in heavy rainstorms.
- The vehicle has had a collision or if the area surrounding the detection sensor is damaged or not correctly repaired.
- There are extreme temperature changes.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

In the event of a fault in the system or if the system does not work due to temporary conditions, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

Surround Vision System

The surround vision system allows views of the vehicle's surroundings to be displayed as a near 360° image – like a bird's eye view – in the infotainment system display.

The system uses four cameras:

- Rear camera, installed in the tailgate.
- Front camera, installed in the radiator grille below the emblem.
- Two side cameras, each located beneath an exterior mirror.

The image in the infotainment system display is divided into two parts: On the right is a view from above the vehicle, and on the left is the view from the front or rear, according to the gear selected or the touchscreen buttons along the lower area of the display.

The parking sensors complete the information on the view.

Activation

The surround vision system is activated by:

- Engaging reverse gear.
- Touching the camera icon ⊙ on the infotainment display.

Note

It may be on the second home screen page; swipe to the left or right.

Functionality

Rear View

Rear view displays an image of the area behind the vehicle on the left-hand part of the display when reverse gear is engaged.

A warning triangle ⚠ may be displayed when obstacles are detected by the rear parking assist sensors. This triangle changes from yellow to red and increases in size the closer the object becomes.

Dynamic guide lines can also be displayed or turned off in the lower area of the display. The horizontal lines are at one metre intervals projected onto the display to define the distance to displayed objects.

The trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

The previous content of the infotainment display returns when the shift lever is moved out of reverse after a short delay. To return to the previous display content sooner, press the camera icon in the display.

Driving faster than 11 km/h in a forward gear will deactivate the system.

Surround View

Surround view displays an image of the area surrounding the vehicle from above, along with the front or rear camera views.

Front View

Front view displays an image of the area in front of the vehicle on the left-hand part of the display. The view is shown after shifting from reverse gear to a forward gear, or by touching the camera icon in the display.

Front view may also display objects automatically detected within 30 cm. Front view is only displayed up to a speed of 11 km/h in a forward gear.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated:

- When driving faster than 11 km/h.
- Pressing the Home button.
- Shifting into **N** (Neutral) or **P** (Park).

General Information

⚠ Warning

The surround vision system does not replace driver vision or attention. It will not display children, pedestrians, cyclists, crossing traffic, animals, or any other objects outside of the camera view areas, e. g. below the bumper, or underneath the vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not drive or park the vehicle using only the surround vision system.

Always check the surroundings of the vehicle before driving.

⚠ Warning

Displayed images may be further or closer than they appear. The area displayed is limited and objects that are close to either edge of the bumper or under the bumper are not displayed on the screen.

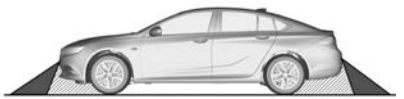
⚠ Warning

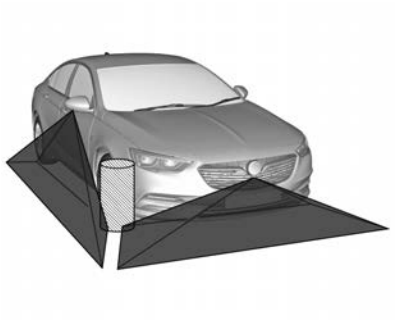
The surround vision system cameras have blind spot areas and will not display all objects

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

near the edges of the vehicle. Folding side mirrors that are out of position will not display the panoramic view correctly.





Blind spots are represented as hatched areas in the illustrations. The areas displayed by the system are shown shaded.

System Limitations

Caution

For optimal operation of the system, it is important to keep the lenses of the cameras in the front radiator grille, the housings of the outside mirrors and in the tailgate between the number plate lights always clean.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Rinse the lenses with water and wipe with a soft cloth. Do not clean the lenses with a steam or high-pressure cleaner.

The surround vision system may not operate correctly when:

- The surroundings are dark.
- The sun or headlight beams shine directly into the camera lenses.
- When driving at night.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The camera lenses are covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- The vehicle is damaged following a collision.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

Parking Assist

Front-rear Parking Assist

⚠ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area when reversing or driving forward while using parking assist system.

The front-rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals and display indications.

Two different acoustic warning signals are sounded for the front and rear monitoring areas, each with a different tone frequency.

The system has four ultrasonic parking sensors each in the rear and front bumper.

Activation

The system is activated automatically at a speed up to 11 km/h or when reverse gear is selected.

An illuminated LED in the parking assist button P indicates the system is ready to operate. If P is switched off within an ignition cycle, the parking assist is deactivated. If vehicle speed has exceeded 25 km/h beforehand, parking assist will be reactivated when speed drops below 11 km/h.

When the system is deactivated, the LED in the button extinguishes and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

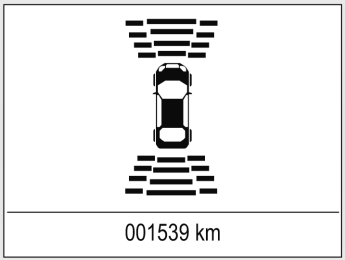
Indication

The system warns the driver with acoustic signals against potentially hazardous obstacles in front of the vehicle within a distance of up to 80 cm and behind the vehicle within a distance of up to 50 cm while a forward gear is engaged, or up to 1.5 m while reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on which side of the vehicle is closer to the obstacle, the acoustic warning signals sound in the vehicle on that side.

The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle moves closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.

Additionally, the distance to rear and front obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the DIC or, depending on model, in the infotainment system display.



The distance indication can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After dismissing the message, distance indication appears again.

The acoustic signal is muted when the parking brake is engaged or the shift lever is in **N** (Neutral).

Deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically when vehicle speed exceeds 11 km/h. Manual deactivation is also possible by pressing the parking assist button P.

When the system is deactivated manually, the LED in the button extinguishes and a message is displayed in the DIC.

After a manual deactivation, the front-rear parking assist is activated again if P is pressed or if reverse gear is engaged.

The complete system can be manually deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu in the infotainment system. It remains deactivated during the ignition cycle or until reactivated.

See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Notes on the Parking Assist System

⚠ Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing, as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the vehicle.

Caution

Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.

Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading of the vehicle.

Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity, e.g. off-road vehicles or trucks, etc. Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range.

A sensor may detect a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments; sporadic false warnings may occur.

Make sure the front number plate is correctly mounted, not bent and there are no gaps to the bumper fascia on either side. Also ensure the front and rear bumper fascias are not damaged.

Towing

When attaching a trailer or bike carrier, etc., with an electrical connection, the parking assist may be deactivated.

A message may be displayed advising this once the vehicle speed has exceeded 75 km/h and then returned to below 11 km/h.

Adjustment of the detection area may be available if a towbar is fitted. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Fault

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, a message is displayed in the DIC.

Advanced Parking Assist

The advanced parking assist system measures a suitable parking spot while passing, calculates the trajectory and automatically steers the vehicle into a parallel or perpendicular parking spot.

Instructions are given in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) or depending on model, in the infotainment system display. Instructions are supported by acoustic signals. The driver must control acceleration and gear shifting, while braking and steering is done automatically.

⚠ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for accepting the parking spot suggested by the system and the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area in all directions when using the advanced parking assist.

Advanced parking assist is combined with the front-rear parking assist. Both systems use the same sensors in the front and rear bumpers, however vehicles with advanced parking assist have six ultrasonic parking sensors in each bumper.

Activation

Advanced parking assist can only be activated when driving forwards.

When searching for a parking spot, the system is ready to operate with a short press of P. The system detects ten metres for parallel parking spots or six metres for perpendicular parking spots when in advanced parking assist mode.

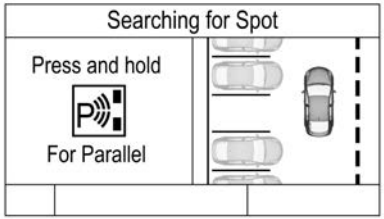
The system can only be activated at a speed up to 30 km/h and the system searches for a parking spot at a speed up to 30 km/h.

The maximum allowed parallel distance between the vehicle and a row of parked cars is 1.8 metres for parallel parking and 2.5 metres for perpendicular parking.

Parking Spot Search Mode

Depending on vehicle model, control and instructions are displayed on the Driver Information Centre (DIC) and/or infotainment system display.

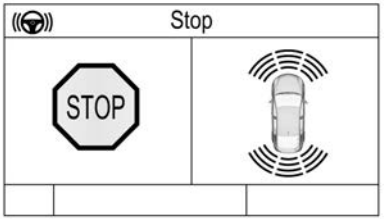
Driver Information Centre



When activated, the system will search for a perpendicular parking spot by default. To search for a parallel spot, press and hold P.

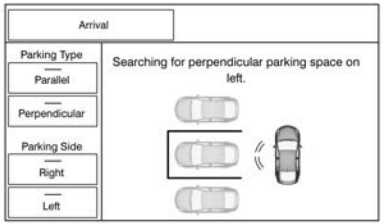
The system is configured to detect parking spots by default on the passenger side.

To detect parking spots on the driver's side, operate the turn signal lever to the driver's side.



When a spot is detected, a visual feedback in the DIC and an acoustic signal is given.

Infotainment System Display



Select parallel or perpendicular parking spot by touching the button on the display.

Select the parking side by touching the button on the display or operating the turn signal lever to the desired side.

When a spot is detected, a visual feedback on the infotainment system display and an acoustic signal is given.

Regardless of the indication method, if the driver does not stop the vehicle after a parking spot is proposed, the system commences a new search for another suitable parking spot.

Park Guiding Mode

The parking spot suggestion of the system is accepted when the vehicle is stopped by the driver within ten metres for parallel parking spots or six metres for perpendicular parking spots, after the STOP message is given.

The system calculates the optimal path into the parking spot.

A brief vibration in the steering wheel after engaging reverse gear indicates the steering is controlled by the system.

The vehicle is steered into the spot automatically by providing the driver detailed instructions for accelerating and shifting forward or reversing. The driver must keep hands away from the steering wheel.

During park guiding mode, the manoeuvring speed is limited. Always pay attention to the sound of the front-rear parking assist.

A continuous sound indicates the distance to an obstacle is less than approx. 30 cm.

If, for any reason, the driver must take over control of the steering, hold the steering wheel only at the outer edge. Automatic steering is cancelled in this event.

Display Indication

The instructions on the display show:

- General hints and warning messages.
- Advice to reduce speed if driving faster than 30 km/h during parking spot searching mode.
- The command to stop the vehicle when a parking spot is detected.
- The direction of driving during the parking manoeuvre.
- The commands to shift into **R** or **D**.
- The command to stop or to drive slowly.
- For some instructions a progress bar is shown in the DIC.
- The successful completion of the parking manoeuvre indicated by a message symbol and a chime.
- The cancelling of a parking manoeuvre.

Display Priorities

Advanced parking assist indication in the Driver Information Centre can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority.

After approving the message by pressing **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever or ✓ on the steering wheel, depending on the model, advanced parking assist instructions appear again and the parking manoeuvre can be continued.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated by:

- A short press of P.
- Parking manoeuvre successfully ended.
- Driving faster than 30 km/h during a parking spot search.
- Driving faster than 8 km/h during a parking guidance.
- Driver interference on the steering wheel detected.
- Exceeding the maximum number of gear changes: eight cycles when parallel parking or five cycles when perpendicular parking.
- Turning the ignition off.

Deactivation by the driver or by the system during manoeuvring will be indicated by a message being displayed. Additionally, an acoustic signal sounds.

Fault

A message is displayed when:

- There is a fault in the system.
- The driver did not successfully complete the parking manoeuvre.
- The system is not operational.

- Any of the deactivation reasons described above apply.

If an object is detected during parking instructions, STOP is indicated on the display. Removing the object will resume the parking manoeuvre. If the object is not removed, the system will be deactivated. A long press of P will activate the system and search for a new parking spot.

Notes on the Parking Assist System

⚠ Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing, as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the vehicle.

Caution

Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.

Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading of the vehicle.

Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity, e.g. off-road vehicles or trucks, etc. Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.

Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range.

A sensor may detect a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments; sporadic false warnings may occur.

Make sure the front number plate is correctly mounted, not bent and there are no gaps to the bumper fascia on either side. Also ensure the front and rear bumper fascias are not damaged.

The advanced parking assist system may not respond to changes in the available parking space after initiating a parking manoeuvre.

The system may recognise an entry, a gateway, a courtyard or even a crossing as a parking spot.

After selecting reverse gear the system will start a parking manoeuvre. Take care regarding the availability of the suggested parking spot.

Low curbs and surface irregularities are not detected by the system. The driver accepts responsibility.

Note

New vehicles require a calibration during first use. For optimal parking guidance, a driving distance of at least 10 km, including a number of bends, is required.

The system is calibrated for factory-fitted wheels. Parking performance is altered with other tyre or wheel sizes.

Cruise Control

The cruise control system can store and maintain speeds from approx. 40 km/h to the maximum vehicle speed.

Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill. It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with local posted speed limits. Activating in first gear is not possible.

⚠ Warning

Do not use the cruise control when road or driving conditions require varying speeds.
A constant speed is not practical in heavy or varying traffic or on winding, slippery or rough roads.

Remember that when illuminates green, the cruise control is maintaining the vehicle's speed. Taking your foot off the accelerator pedal does not reduce the speed. To deactivate the cruise control, press the brake pedal or push .

The cruise control does not apply the vehicle's brakes. The vehicle may gain speed when going down steep hills.

When climbing steep hills (particularly when towing), the vehicle may lose speed. In this case, use the accelerator pedal.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Release the accelerator pedal when the speed returns to the set speed.

The cruise control is cancelled if Traction Control (TC) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) becomes active, indicated by flashing on the instrument panel display.

Switching On

The cruise control switches are located on the steering wheel and vary depending on vehicle model. Operation is the same.

Press on the steering wheel. illuminates white in the instrument cluster.

Activation

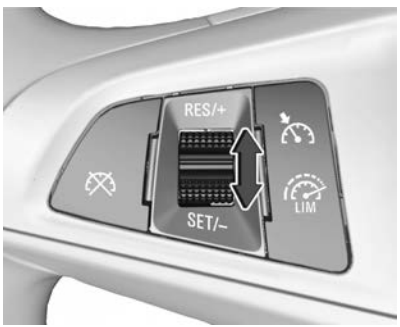
Accelerate to the desired speed above 40 km/h and turn the steering wheel thumbwheel to **SET/-**. The current speed is stored and maintained. illuminates green in the instrument cluster. On some models the set speed is also indicated.

The accelerator pedal can be released.

Vehicle speed can be temporarily increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed.

Cruise control remains activated while shifting gears.

Increase Speed



With cruise control active, hold the steering wheel thumbwheel turned to **RES/+** or briefly turn to **RES/+** repeatedly. Vehicle speed increases continuously or in small increments.

Alternatively, accelerate to the desired speed and store by turning to **SET/-**.

Reduce Speed

With cruise control active, hold the steering wheel thumbwheel turned to **SET/-** or briefly turn to **SET/-** repeatedly. Vehicle speed decreases continuously or in small increments.

Deactivation

Press on the steering wheel. illuminates white in the instrument cluster.

The cruise control is deactivated, but not switched off. The last stored speed remains in memory.

Automatic Deactivation

The cruise control may automatically deactivate when:

- Vehicle speed is below approx. 40 km/h.
- Vehicle speed drops more than 25 km/h below the set speed.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The shift lever is in N.
- Engine speed is in a very low range.
- The Traction Control (TC) system or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is operating.
- The parking brake is applied.
- Simultaneously pressing **RES/+** and the brake pedal deactivates the cruise control and will delete the stored speed.

Resume Stored Speed

If the cruise control system has not been turned off since it was last set, turn the steering wheel thumbwheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 30 km/h. The stored speed will be returned.

Switching Off

Press on the steering wheel. extinguishes in the instrument cluster. The stored speed is deleted.

Pressing LIM on the steering wheel to activate the speed limiter, or turning the ignition off also switches the cruise control off and deletes the stored speed.

Speed Limiter

The speed limiter prevents the vehicle exceeding a preset maximum speed.

Maximum speed can be set at speeds above 25 km/h. The driver can only accelerate up to the preset speed. Deviations from the limited speed may occur when driving downhill.

The preset speed limit is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) when the system is active.

Activation

The speed limiter switches are located on the steering wheel and vary depending on vehicle model. Operation is the same.

Press LIM on the steering wheel. LIM illuminates in the DIC.

If cruise control has been activated previously, it is switched off when the speed limiter is activated and extinguishes.

Set Limited Speed

Accelerate to the desired speed and briefly turn the steering wheel thumbwheel to **SET/-**. The current speed is stored as the vehicle maximum speed. Depending on vehicle model, LIM and the speed limit is displayed, or LIM changes to green.

Change Limited Speed

With the speed limiter active, hold or briefly turn the steering wheel thumbwheel to **RES/+** to increase, or **SET/-** to decrease the desired maximum speed.

Exceeding Limited Speed

When exceeding the limited speed without driver input, the speed will flash in the DIC and a chime sounds during this period.

In the event of an emergency, it is possible to exceed the speed limit by pressing the accelerator pedal firmly to near fully pressed. In this case no chime appears.

Release the accelerator pedal and the speed limiter function is reactivated once a speed lower than the limit speed is obtained.

Deactivation

Press on the steering wheel. The speed limiter is deactivated and the vehicle can be driven without speed limit.

Depending on vehicle model the stored limited speed is indicated in brackets or LIM changes to white.

Additionally, a corresponding message is displayed. The speed limiter is deactivated, but not switched off and the last stored speed remains in memory.

Resume Limited Speed

Turn the steering wheel thumbwheel to **RES/+**.

The stored speed limit will be obtained and is indicated without brackets in the DIC.

Switching Off

Press LIM on the steering wheel. The speed limit indication extinguishes in the DIC and the stored speed is deleted.

By pressing on the steering wheel to activate cruise control or adaptive cruise control, the speed limiter is also deactivated and the stored speed is deleted.

Turning the ignition off also deactivates the speed limiter, but the speed limit will be stored for next speed limiter activation.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive cruise control is an enhancement to conventional cruise control with the additional feature of maintaining a following distance behind a detected vehicle and slowing your vehicle to a stop behind that vehicle.

When the vehicle ahead accelerates after a brief stop, the adaptive cruise control will drive off automatically without driver action. If necessary, press **RES/+** or press the accelerator pedal to resume adaptive cruise control.

It then adjusts the vehicle speed to follow the vehicle ahead at the selected following distance.

Pressing the accelerator pedal allows more control over the acceleration after driving off.

Note

Automatic braking is disabled during usage of the accelerator pedal.

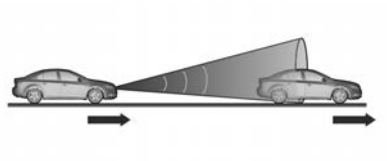
If the stopped vehicle ahead stands for a longer time and then begins to move forward, the green illuminated vehicle ahead indicator will flash and a warning chime will sound as a reminder to check the traffic before resuming.

⚠ Warning

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated or cancelled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop and can start moving. Always be prepared to manually apply the brake pedal to hold the vehicle stationary.

Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by the adaptive cruise control. Always move the shift lever to P (Park) and turn the ignition off before leaving the vehicle.

To facilitate overtaking a vehicle on a freeway, the activation of a turn signal reduces the following distance for a short time. This function is implemented only on the driver's side.



Adaptive cruise control uses radar and camera sensors to detect the vehicles ahead. If no vehicle is detected in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control will behave like a conventional cruise control.

Adaptive cruise control is designed to be used on long straight roads such as highways or country roads with steady traffic. Do not use the system if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.

⚠ Warning

Complete driver attention is always required while driving with adaptive cruise control.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

The driver remains fully in control of the vehicle because the brake pedal, the accelerator pedal and the cancel switch have priority over any adaptive cruise control operation.

Switching On

Press on the steering wheel to switch on adaptive cruise control. is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Activation by Setting the Speed

Adaptive cruise control can be activated at speeds above 40 km/h. It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with local posted speed limits.

Accelerate to the desired speed and turn the steering wheel thumbwheel to **SET/-**. The current speed is stored and maintained.

The adaptive cruise control symbol, the following distance setting and the set speed are indicated in the DIC. The accelerator pedal can be released.

Adaptive cruise control remains activated during gear shifting.

Overriding Set Speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the selected set speed by pressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the desired distance if a slower vehicle is ahead. Otherwise it returns to the stored speed.

Once the system is activated, adaptive cruise control decelerates or brakes if it detects a vehicle ahead which is slower or closer than the desired following distance.

⚠ Warning

The system temporarily deactivates automatic braking when the set speed is overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal. This is indicated as a warning in the Driver Information Centre or by turning blue.

Take Over Current Speed

If the accelerator pedal is pressed, the current vehicle speed is taken over as the stored speed. This is also valid if the current vehicle speed is lower than the set speed.

Increase Speed

With adaptive cruise control active, hold **RES/+** to increase speed continuously. Push **RES/+** repeatedly to increase speed in small increments.

Reduce Speed

With adaptive cruise control active, hold **SET/-** to decrease speed continuously. Push **SET/-** repeatedly to decrease speed in small increments.

Resume Stored Speed

If the system is switched on but inactive and a speed was stored before, turn the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 5 km/h to resume the stored speed.

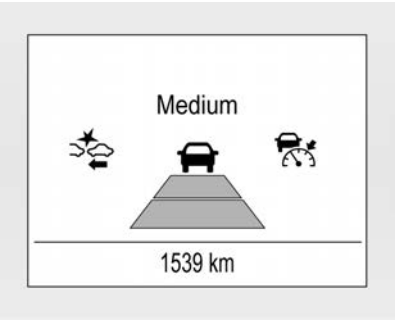
Setting the Following Distance

When adaptive cruise control detects a slower moving vehicle in the driving path, it will adjust the vehicle speed to maintain the following distance selected by the driver.

The following distance can be set to near, medium or far.

Press on the steering wheel. The current setting is shown in the DIC.

Press again repeatedly to change the following distance. The setting is also displayed in the DIC.



The selected following distance is indicated by filled distance bars in the adaptive cruise control page.

Note

The following distance setting is shared with the sensitivity setting of Forward Collision Alert. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *256*.

Example: If the far setting is selected, then the driver is warned sooner before a possible collision.

⚠ Warning

The Driver accepts full responsibility to drive with the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather, visibility and traffic regulations.

The following distance must be adjusted or the system switched off if required by the prevailing conditions.

Adaptive Cruise Control in Sport Mode

On vehicles with Flex Ride driving modes, the driver can slightly increase the adaptive cruise control acceleration when Sport mode is selected. This function can be deactivated in the Flex Ride visualisation menu. See *Interactive Drive Control System* ⇨ *228*.

Detecting the Vehicle Ahead

The green illuminated vehicle ahead indicator is displayed when the system detects a vehicle in the driving path. The range of the sensors is between 25 and 150 metres depending on vehicle speed.

If this symbol does not display, or displays briefly, the adaptive cruise control will not respond to vehicles ahead.

Deactivation

Adaptive cruise control is deactivated by the driver when:

- on the steering wheel is pressed.
- The brake pedal is applied.
- The shift lever is moved to **N** (Neutral).

The system is also automatically deactivated when:

- Vehicle speed is above 190 km/h or slows to a stop without deactivating within five minutes.
- The Traction Control (TC) system is deactivated or the system is operating.
- The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is deactivated or the system is operating.
- There is no traffic and nothing detected on the road sides for approx. one minute. In this case there are no radar echoes and the sensor may report that it is blocked.
- The active emergency braking system is applying the brakes.
- Driving on steep inclines.
- The radar sensor is blocked by an ice or water film.
- A fault is detected in the radar, camera, engine or brake system.
- The brakes need to cool down.
- The incline uphill or downhill is greater than 20%.
- The electric parking brake is applied.
- The vehicle is being held to a stop by the system for more than five minutes.

- The vehicle stops, the driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened.

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated, changes from green to white and a message is displayed in the DIC. The stored speed is maintained.

Depending on model, the stored speed is indicated in brackets in the DIC or changes from green to white when the system is deactivated but not switched off.

⚠ Warning

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated, the driver must take over full braking and engine control immediately.

Switching Off

Press on the steering wheel to switch off the adaptive cruise control. extinguishes in the DIC and the stored speed is deleted.

Turning the ignition off also switches off the adaptive cruise control and deletes the stored speed.

Driver's Attention

- Use adaptive cruise control carefully on bends or mountain roads, as it can lose the vehicle ahead and needs time to detect it again.
- Do not use the system on slippery roads as it can create rapid changes in tyre traction (wheel spinning), resulting in loss of control of the vehicle.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control during rain, snow or on dirt roads, as the radar sensor can be covered by a water film, dust, ice or snow. This reduces or suppresses completely the visibility. In case of sensor blockage, clean the sensor cover.

System Limitations

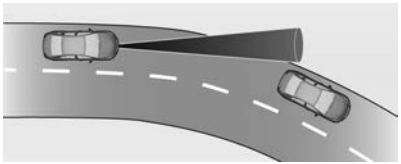
⚠ Warning

The system's automatic brake force does not permit hard braking. Therefore the braking level may not be sufficient to avoid a collision.

- After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle. If a new vehicle is detected, the system may accelerate instead of braking.
- Adaptive cruise control does ignore the oncoming traffic.
- Adaptive cruise control does not consider pedestrians and animals for braking and driving off.
- Adaptive cruise control considers stopped vehicles only at low speed.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control when towing a trailer.

- Do not use adaptive cruise control on roads with an incline of more than 10%.

Bends



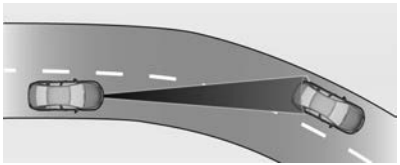
The adaptive cruise control calculates a predicted path based on centrifugal force. This predicted path considers the current bend characteristic, but cannot consider a future bend change.

The system may lose the current vehicle ahead or consider a vehicle which is not in the actual lane. This can happen when entering or exiting a bend or if the bend gets tighter or wider.

The camera applies a certain correction based on the detectable lane markings. will extinguish if a vehicle ahead is no longer detected.

If the centrifugal force is too high in a bend, the system slows the vehicle slightly. This braking level is not designed to avoid spinning off the bend.

The driver is responsible for reducing the selected speed before entering a bend and in general to adapt the speed to the road type and to existing speed limits.



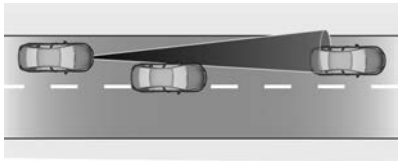
Freeways

On freeways, adapt the set speed to the situation and the weather. Always consider that adaptive cruise control has a limited visibility range, a limited braking level and a certain reaction time to verify if a vehicle is on the driving path or not.

Furthermore, adaptive cruise control was designed to brake as late as possible to allow changing the lane before the automatic braking. Adaptive cruise control may not be able to brake the vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a much slower vehicle or after a lane change. This is particularly true while driving fast or if the visibility is reduced due to weather conditions.

While entering or exiting a freeway, adaptive cruise control may lose the vehicle ahead and accelerate up to the set speed. For this reason, decrease the set speed before the exit or before the entry.

Vehicle Path Change



If another vehicle enters your driving path, adaptive cruise control will first consider the vehicle when it is completely in your path. Be ready to

take action and press the brake pedal, if you need to brake more quickly.

Hill Considerations

⚠ Warning

Do not use adaptive cruise control on roads with steep hills.

System performance on hills depends on vehicle speed, vehicle load, traffic conditions and the road gradient. It may not detect a vehicle in your path while driving on hills.

Adaptive control is deactivated automatically if the vehicle slows uphill on an incline greater than 10%. In this condition, be prepared to take control of the vehicle.

Note

Applying the brakes deactivates the system.

Radar Unit

The radar unit is mounted behind the radiator grille below the brand emblem.

⚠ Warning

The radar unit was aligned carefully during vehicle manufacture. Therefore, in the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

event of a front-end impact the alignment may be compromised. Do not use the system.

The front bumper may appear to be intact, however the radar unit behind can be out of position and react incorrectly. After an accident, consult a dealer to verify and adjust the radar unit position.

Settings

Adaptive cruise control settings can be changed in the vehicle personalisation menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Fault

If the adaptive cruise control does not operate due to temporary conditions, e.g. blockage by ice, overheated brakes or low speed manoeuvres, etc., or if there is a

permanent system error, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

Forward collision alert may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end collisions.

If the vehicle is equipped with conventional cruise control, the forward collision alert uses the front camera in the windscreen to detect a vehicle in your path directly ahead. If the vehicle is equipped with adaptive cruise control, the forward collision alert uses the radar sensor and front camera to detect a vehicle in your path directly ahead.

A detected vehicle ahead is indicated by the vehicle ahead indicator . If a vehicle directly ahead is approached too quickly, a warning chime and alert in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) is provided. Additionally the driver is notified by a flashing red LED stripe or a pop up symbol in the head-up display which is projected on to the windscreen in the driver's field of view.

A precondition is that forward collision alert is not deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Activation

- Forward collision alert with the front camera detects vehicles up to distances of approx. 60 metres and operates automatically at all speeds above walking speed.
- Forward collision alert with the radar sensor detects vehicles up to distances of approx. 150 metres and operates automatically at all speeds above walking speed.

Alerting the Driver

 illuminates green in the instrument cluster when the system has detected a vehicle in the driving path. On vehicles with head-up display, is projected on to the windscreen. changes to yellow when the distance to a preceding moving vehicle becomes small.

⚠ Warning

FCA is a warning system only and does not apply the brakes.

When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. It also may not provide any warning at all.

The FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

The driver bears full responsibility for maintaining safe following distance according to applicable traffic rules, weather and road conditions, etc. at all times.

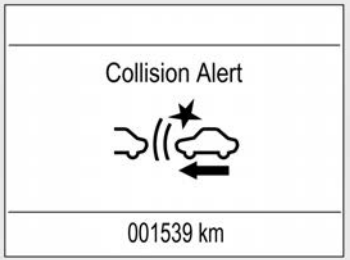
When the time to a potential collision with a preceding vehicle becomes too small and a collision is imminent, a collision alert symbol is displayed in the DIC.

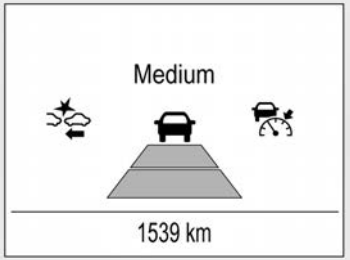
The driver is also notified by a flashing red LED stripe or a pop-up symbol in the head-up display which is projected on to the windscreen in the driver's field of view. Simultaneously a warning chime sounds.

Press the brake pedal and steer the vehicle as required by the situation.

Selecting Alert Sensitivity

Press on the steering wheel to set the alert sensitivity to near, medium or far.





The first button press displays the current setting on the DIC. Additional button presses will

change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed.

The alert timing will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the further away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing.

Note

The alert timing sensitivity setting is shared with the following distance setting of the adaptive cruise control, if equipped. Changing the alert timing sensitivity changes the adaptive cruise control following distance setting.

Deactivation

The system can be deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

If the forward collision alert was deactivated, alert sensitivity is set to Medium when the ignition is next turned on. The last selected setting will be stored when the ignition is switched off.

System Limitations

Forward collision alert is designed to provide a warning for vehicles only, but may react also to other objects.

In the following cases, forward collision alert may not detect a vehicle ahead or sensor performance may be limited:

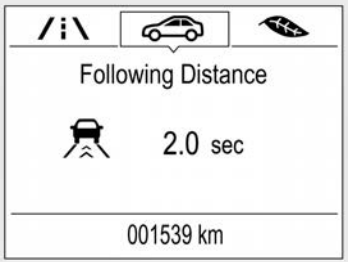
- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- During night-time driving.
- Where the weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The windscreen sensor is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or is affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers.

Following Distance Indication System

The following distance indication displays the distance to a preceding moving vehicle.

The front camera in the windscreen is used to detect the distance of a vehicle directly ahead in the vehicle's path. It is active at speeds above 40 km/h.

When a preceding vehicle is detected ahead, the distance is indicated in seconds and displayed on a page in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).



- For LT, RS and Calais Tourer (Police): Select the Vehicle Information menu using the MENU button on the turn signal

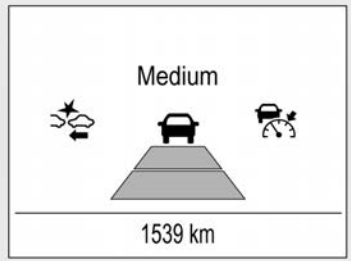
lever. Turn the adjuster wheel to choose Following Distance page.

- For vehicles except LT, RS and Calais Tourer (Police): Select the Info menu using the steering wheel buttons and press ▽ to scroll down to the Following Distance page.

For further information on using the DIC menus see *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *116*.

The minimum indicated distance is 0.5 seconds.

If there is no vehicle ahead or the vehicle ahead is out of range, two dashes will be displayed: -.- sec.



If the vehicle is equipped with adaptive cruise control and it is active, this page shows the alert sensitivity setting instead of following distance setting.

System Limitations

In the following cases, following distance indication sensor performance is limited:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- During night-time driving.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The sensor is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers.

Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)

Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) can help reduce damage and injury from collisions with vehicles, pedestrians and obstacles detected directly ahead, when a collision can no longer be avoided either by manual braking or by steering.

Before AEB applies, the driver is warned by the forward collision alert or the front pedestrian braking systems.
See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *256* or *Front Pedestrian Protection System* ⇨ *263*.

AEB uses various inputs, such as a camera sensor, radar unit, brake pressure and vehicle speed, to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.

⚠ Warning

This system is not intended to replace the driver's responsibility for driving the vehicle and looking ahead. Its function is limited to supplemental use only to reduce the vehicle speed before a collision.

The system may not react to animals. After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

Functionality

If equipped only with the front camera, AEB operates in a forward gear above walking speed up to approx. 80 km/h.

For vehicles with a radar unit, AEB operates in a forward gear above walking speed at all speeds.

A precondition is that the forward collision system is not deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

The system includes:

- Brake preparation system.
- Emergency automatic braking.
- Forward looking brake assist.
- Intelligent brake assist (only with radar unit).
- Front pedestrian braking system.

Brake Preparation System

When approaching a vehicle ahead or a pedestrian so quickly that a collision is likely, the brake preparation system slightly pressurises the brakes. This reduces the response time, when manual or automatic braking is requested.

The brake system is prepared so that braking can occur rapidly. If equipped only with front camera the system operates up to a speed of approx. 80 km/h.

Emergency Automatic Braking

After activation of brake preparation system and just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision, or prohibit a crash.

Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard.

This front automatic braking can only occur if a vehicle ahead is detected, indicated by the vehicle ahead indicator .

On vehicles with front pedestrian braking, front automatic braking can also occur when a pedestrian ahead is detected, indicated by the pedestrian ahead indicator .

If equipped only with front camera, the system operates up to a speed of approx. 80 km/h. Below a speed of 40 km/h the system can apply full braking.

Emergency automatic braking may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to attempt to avoid a potential collision. If this happens, emergency automatic braking may engage the electric parking brake to hold the vehicle at a stop. To release, press the electric parking brake button or firmly press the accelerator pedal.

⚠ Warning

Emergency automatic braking is an emergency collision preparation feature and is not designed to avoid crashes. Do not rely on the system to brake the vehicle.

Emergency automatic braking will not brake outside of its operating speed range and only responds to detected vehicles and pedestrians.

Forward Looking Brake Assist

In addition to the brake preparation system and emergency automatic braking, the forward looking brake assist function increases brake sensitivity. Therefore, less brake pedal pressure is required to achieve immediate hard braking.

This function helps the driver brake faster and harder before the imminent collision.

If equipped with only a front camera, the system operates up to a speed of approx. 80 km/h.

⚠ Warning

Autonomous emergency braking is not designed to apply hard autonomous braking or to automatically avoid a collision. It is designed to reduce the vehicle speed before a collision. It may not react to animals. After

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

The system is designed to work with all occupants wearing their seat belts.

Intelligent Brake Assist

If the vehicle is equipped with a radar unit, intelligent brake assist may activate when the brake pedal is applied quickly by providing a boost to braking based on the speed of approach and distance to a vehicle ahead.

Minor brake pedal pulsations or pedal movement during this time are normal and the brake pedal should continue to be applied as needed.

Intelligent brake assist will automatically disengage only when the brake pedal is released.

⚠ Warning

Intelligent brake assist may increase vehicle braking in situations when it may not be necessary. You could block the flow of traffic. If this occurs, take your foot off the brake pedal and then apply the brakes as needed.

Front Pedestrian Braking

See *Front Pedestrian Protection System* ⇨ *263*.

Deactivation

AEB can be deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*. If deactivated a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

System Limitations

In some cases, the AEB system may provide automatic braking in situations that seem to be unnecessary, such as in parking garages, due to traffic signs in a curve or due to vehicles in another lane. This is normal operation; the vehicle does not need service.

Firmly apply the accelerator pedal to override the automatic braking if the situation and the surroundings permit.

In the following cases, AEB performance is limited:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- Detecting all vehicles, especially vehicles with a trailer, tractors, muddy vehicles, etc.
- Detecting a vehicle when weather limits visibility, such as in fog, rain, or snow.
- During night-time driving.
- The sensor in the windscreen is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers.

To avoid malfunction, always keep the areas of the camera sensor in the windscreen and the radar unit behind the radiator grille clean from dirt, dust, ice and snow.

⚠ Warning

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

Fault

Messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) if the system does not work as it should, or if a fault is detected. See a dealer for assistance.

Front Pedestrian Protection System

Front pedestrian protection may assist to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end collisions with nearby pedestrians when driving in a forward gear.

The system uses the front camera in the windscreen to detect a pedestrian in your path, directly ahead.

Front pedestrian protection can detect pedestrians and provide an alert while the vehicle is in a forward gear at speeds between 8 km/h and 80 km/h. Additionally front pedestrian protection can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle.

During daytime driving, the system detects pedestrians up to a distance of approx. 40 metres. When driving at night, system performance is limited.

Front pedestrian protection can be set to Off, Alert, or Alert & Brake. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

⚠ Danger

Front pedestrian braking does not provide an alert or automatically brake the vehicle, unless it detects a pedestrian.

The system may not detect pedestrians, including children, when the pedestrian is not directly ahead, not fully visible, not standing upright, or when part of a group.

Front pedestrian protection includes:

- Detecting a pedestrian ahead.
- Front pedestrian alert.
- Automatic braking.

Detecting Pedestrian Ahead

A pedestrian detected ahead, up to a distance of approximately 40 m, is indicated by displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). On vehicles with head-up display, is projected on the windscreen.

Front Pedestrian Alert

When approaching a detected pedestrian too quickly, a red flashing LED alert or the in the head-up display is projected on the windscreen in the driver's field of view. A warning chime is also provided.

The brake system may prepare for driver braking to occur more rapidly which can cause a brief, mild deceleration. Continue to apply the brake pedal as required.

Cruise control or adaptive cruise control may be disengaged when the front pedestrian alert occurs.

Automatic Braking

Automatic braking can be disabled/enabled. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

If enabled and a collision into a pedestrian directly ahead is imminent, and the brakes have not been applied, automatic braking may apply the brakes moderately or brake the vehicle hard. This can help avoid some very low speed pedestrian collisions or reduce pedestrian injury.

Automatic braking levels may be reduced under certain conditions, such as higher speeds.

If this happens, automatic braking may engage the electric parking brake to hold the vehicle at a stop. Release the parking brake. Pressing the accelerator pedal will also release automatic braking and the electric parking brake.

This system includes intelligent brake assist, and the emergency automatic braking system may also respond to pedestrians. See *Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)* ⇨ *259*.

General Information

⚠ Warning

The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

⚠ Warning

Front pedestrian braking may alert or automatically brake the vehicle suddenly in situations where it is unexpected and

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

undesired. It could falsely alert or brake for objects similar in shape or size to pedestrians, including shadows.

This is normal operation and the vehicle does not need a service. To override automatic braking, firmly press the accelerator pedal if it is safe to do so.

⚠ Warning

Using the front pedestrian braking system while towing a trailer could cause loss of vehicle control and a crash.

Turn the system to Alert or Off when towing a trailer. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

System Limitations

In the following cases, front pedestrian protection may not detect a pedestrian ahead, or sensor performance may be limited.

- The vehicle speed is out of range; it needs to be between 8 km/h to 80 km/h in a forward gear.
- The distance to a pedestrian ahead is more than 40 metres.
- When driving on winding or hilly roads.
- When driving at night.
- Weather limits visibility, such as in fog, rain, or snow.
- The sensor in the windscreen is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers.

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

The side blind zone alert system detects objects on either side of the vehicle, within a specified blind spot zone. A visual alert is displayed in each exterior mirror when objects are detected that may not be visible in the interior and exterior mirrors.

Radar sensors for side blind zone alert are located behind each side of the rear bumper.

⚠ Warning

Side blind zone alert does not replace driver vision. The system does not detect:

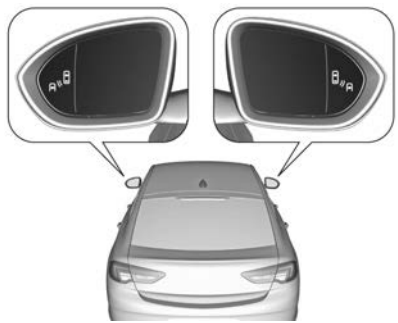
- Vehicles outside the side blind zones which may be rapidly approaching.
- Pedestrians, cyclists or animals.

Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over your shoulder and use the turn signal.

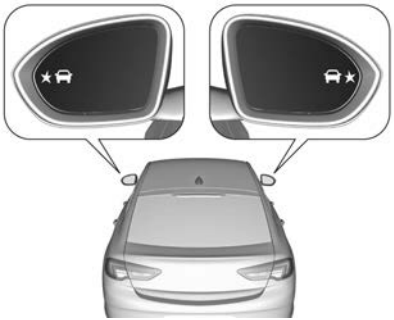
When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone while driving forward, either while passing a vehicle or being passed, the yellow warning symbol will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror. If the driver then activates a turn signal, starts flashing yellow as a warning not to change lanes.

Note

If the overtaking vehicle is travelling at least 10 km/h faster than the vehicle being overtaken, in the relevant exterior mirror may not illuminate.



When the engine is started, both exterior mirror displays will briefly illuminate to indicate the system is operating.



If the vehicle is equipped with lane change alert is displayed in the mirrors. See *Lane Change Alert (LCA)* ⇨ *266*.

Detection Zones

The detection zones commence at the rear bumper and extend approx. three metres rearward and to the sides. The height of the zone is between approx. half a metre and two metres from the ground.

The system is deactivated if the vehicle is towing a trailer or if a bike carrier is attached.

Side blind zone alert is designed to ignore stationary objects such as guardrails, posts, curbs, walls and beams. Parked vehicles or oncoming vehicles are not detected.

Deactivation

The side blind zone alert can be deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Deactivation is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

System Limitations

Occasional missed alerts can occur under normal circumstances and will increase in wet conditions. The system may not operate properly when:

- Ice, snow, mud, stickers, magnets, metal plates, or anything else covers the sensors.
- Driving in heavy rainstorms.
- The area surrounding the detection sensor has been damaged or is not repaired correctly.
- There are extreme temperature changes.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

In the event of a fault in the system or if the system does not work due to temporary conditions, the symbols in the mirrors will be permanently illuminated and a message is displayed in the DIC. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

Lane Change Alert (LCA)

Additional to the side blind zone alert system, lane change alert recognises rapidly approaching vehicles from behind in parallel lanes next to your vehicle. If the vehicle has lane change alert, then side blind zone alert is always included.

See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* ⇨ *265*.

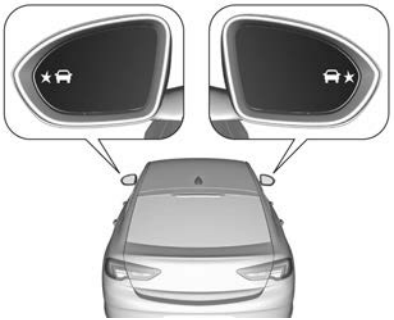
The lane change alert system alerts visually in each exterior mirror when detecting rapidly approaching vehicles from behind. The radar distance sensors are located behind each side of the rear bumper.

⚠ Warning

Lane change alert does not replace driver vision. Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over your shoulder and use the turn signal.

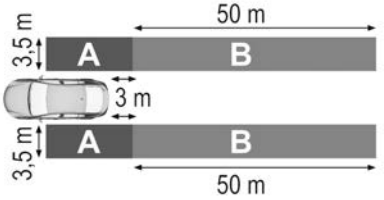
When the system detects an approaching vehicle from behind which is travelling considerably faster, the yellow warning symbol will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror. If the driver then activates the turn signal, starts flashing yellow as a warning not to change lanes.

Lane change alert is active at all speeds.



When the engine is started, both exterior mirror displays will briefly come on to indicate the system is operating.

Detection Zones



The system's sensors cover parallel zones on each side of the vehicle approx. 3.5 metres wide, 3 metres rearward in the side blind zone alert area **(A)** and 50 metres rearward in the lane change alert area **(B)**.

The zones start at each exterior mirror. The height of the zone is between approx. 0.5 metres and 2 metres from the ground.

System Limitations

Occasional missed alerts can occur under normal circumstances or in sharp curves.

The system can temporarily alert for objects in the blind zone during specific weather conditions such as rain, hail, etc. Driving on a wet road or in the transition from a dry area to a wet area can cause to illuminate, as water splash can be interpreted as an object.

Otherwise may illuminate due to guardrails, signs, trees, shrubs or other immobile objects. This is normal operation and the system does not need to be serviced.

The system may not operate properly when:

- Ice, snow, mud, stickers, magnets, metal plates, or anything else covers the sensors.
- Driving in heavy rainstorms.
- The area surrounding the detection sensor has been damaged or is not repaired correctly.
- There are extreme temperature changes.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

In the event of a fault in the system or if the system does not work due to temporary conditions, the symbols in the mirrors will be permanently illuminated and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). Seek the assistance of a dealer.

Note

When the vehicle is new, the system requires calibration. For optimal performance, drive as soon as possible on a straight highway road with roadside objects, e.g. guardrails and barriers for some distance.

Deactivation

The lane change alert can be deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *129*.

Deactivation is indicated by a message in the DIC.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA)

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) helps to avoid collisions due to unintentional lane departures.

The front camera observes the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving.

If the vehicle approaches a lane marking, the steering wheel is gently turned to position the vehicle back into the lane. Turn the steering wheel in same direction if system steering is not sufficient. Turn the steering wheel gently into opposite direction if lane change is intended.

When crossing a lane marking significantly, lane keep assist displays a visual warning and an acoustic warning sounds.

Unintended lane departure is assumed:

- without using turn signal,
- using the turn signal in the opposite direction of the lane departure,
- without braking,

- without acceleration, or
- without active steering.

Note

- The system may be switched off during detection of ambiguous lane markings, e.g. in construction areas.
- The system may be switched off if it detects lanes which are too narrow, too wide or too curved.

Activation

LKA is activated by pressing . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate that the system is switched on.

When in the instrument cluster or in the head-up display illuminates green, the system is ready to assist. The system is operational at vehicle speeds above 60 km/h and if lane markings are available.

The system gently turns the steering wheel and changes to yellow if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using the turn signal in that direction.

The system alerts by flashing together with three chimes from that direction, if the lane is departed significantly.

The system is only operable when a lane marking is detected. If the system only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only assist for this side.

LKA detects hands-free driving. In this case a message in the Driver Information Centre is displayed and a chime sounds as long as lane keep assist detects hands-free driving.

⚠ Warning

Always keep your attention on the road and maintain correct vehicle position within the lane, otherwise vehicle damage, injury or death could occur.

Lane keep assist does not continuously steer the vehicle. The system may not keep the vehicle in the lane or give an alert, even if a lane marking is detected.

The steering of the lane keep assist may not be sufficient to avoid a lane departure.

The system may not detect hands-off driving due to external influences (road condition and surface, weather, etc.). The driver has full responsibility to control

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

the vehicle and is always required to keep the hands on the steering wheel while driving.

Using the system while driving on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle. Switch the system off.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing . The LED in the button extinguishes.

The system is also deactivated automatically when a trailer is detected.

System Limitations

The system may not operate properly when:

- Vehicle speed is out of range, e.g. below 60 km/h.
- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- When driving at night.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The sensor in the windscreen is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers.
- The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Vehicles are detected closely ahead.
- Banked roads.
- Road edges.
- Roads with poor lane markings.
- Sudden lighting changes.
- Vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres.

Switch off the system if the system is disturbed by tar marks, shadows, road cracks, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections.

Fuel

⚠ Danger

EXHAUST WARNING – CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING

Exhaust gases can contain carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas, which can cause unconsciousness and even death to both humans and animals.

Gases could be inhaled if the exhaust system on your vehicle is faulty.

To protect against exhaust gases entering the vehicle, the exhaust system and body should be inspected:

- Each time the vehicle is serviced.
- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

- Whenever the exhaust system, underbody or rear of the vehicle is damaged.

Take the vehicle to a Holden Dealer if you think the vehicle needs inspecting for any of the above reasons.

Do not sit (or leave children or pets) in a parked vehicle for any extended period of time with the engine running. Turn the fan on using any setting that brings outside air into the vehicle. Do not run the engine in an enclosed area (such as the garage) any longer than is needed to move the vehicle.

⚠ Danger

Always switch off the engine and any mobile phones when refuelling.

Do not smoke or allow open flames or sparks near the vehicle when refuelling.

If fuel fumes are detected while driving, the cause should be identified and corrected without delay by a Holden Dealer.

Static electricity can ignite fuel vapour. Only use pumps, hoses and containers that are properly grounded when filling up with fuel.

To avoid injury to you and to others, read and follow all instructions at the petrol station pump.

Petrol Engines

⚠ Warning

USE OF FUEL CONTAINING ETHANOL

When filling the fuel tank with an ethanol-petrol fuel blend, under no circumstances should fuel containing more than 10% ethanol be used.

Use of such fuels may result in engine malfunction, starting and operating difficulties and materials degradation. These adverse effects could result in permanent damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

The use of fuel containing more than 10% ethanol may also affect your vehicle warranty to the extent that Holden considers that the fuel affects the specifications and quality of your vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

It is also important to note that when fuel containing ethanol is used, fuel consumption can be expected to increase due to the lower energy content of ethanol.

The vehicle may be refuelled with E10 and unleaded fuel containing no ethanol. It is acceptable to mix these fuels.

The use of any fuel, other than the fuel specified, may seriously damage the vehicle and may void the warranty. See *Recommended Fuel* ⇨ *272*. Only clean fuel of good quality should be used.

Diesel Engine

⚠ Warning

USE OF FUEL CONTAINING ETHANOL

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Under no circumstances should you use diesel fuel containing ethanol.

Use of such fuels may result in engine malfunction, starting and operating difficulties and materials degradation.

These adverse effects could result in permanent damage to your vehicle and personal injury.

Recommended Fuel

Petrol Engines

2.0L 4 Cylinder

Use of clean premium unleaded petrol of 95 Research Octane Number (RON) rating or higher is recommended.

The use of premium unleaded petrol of 98 RON may provide a small improvement in performance and fuel economy.

The use of unleaded petrol of regular 91 RON rating may be used where 95 RON is not available, however a reduction in performance may be noticed.

Caution

Use of fuel with too low an octane rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

Purchasing your fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel which contains abnormal fuel properties.

3.6L V6

Use of clean unleaded petrol of 91 Research Octane Number (RON) rating or higher is recommended.

The use of premium unleaded petrol of 95 or 98 RON may provide a small improvement in performance and fuel economy.

Caution

Use of fuel with too low an octane rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

Purchasing your fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel which contains abnormal fuel properties.

Diesel Engine

Diesel engines must only be run using commercially available diesel fuel that meets the requirements of Euro standard EN590.

Do not use fuel with more than 10 ppm sulphur content.

The use of bio-diesel containing up to 7 % fatty acid methyl ester (“FAME”) also known as “B7” is also permitted provided the FAME meets the Euro Standard EN14214, and the resultant B7 blend meets Euro Standard EN590.

Do not use marine diesel oils or heating oils.

The flow and filterability of diesel fuel are temperature-dependent. When temperatures are low, use diesel fuel with guaranteed winter properties.

Caution

Use only biodiesel blends containing up to a maximum of 7 % FAME that meets Euro standard EN590.

Purchasing fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel with more than 7 % FAME or fuel that has abnormal fuel properties.

The use of any other biodiesel that does not have the certification referred to above, or has a FAME content exceeding 7 %, may cause serious damage to your vehicle (including engine failure).

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Damage attributable to the use of non-certified bio-diesel is not covered by your vehicle warranty. In no event will Holden be responsible or bear any liability for any damage or loss that may arise in connection with the use of any fuel that does not meet this specification.

Purchasing your fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel which contains abnormal fuel properties.

Filling the Tank

The fuel filler is located behind the hinged fuel filler door on the driver's side of the vehicle.

⚠ Danger

Before refuelling, switch off the engine and mobile phones.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

⚠ Danger

Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.

If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a Holden dealer.

The fuel filler door can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked. Release the fuel filler door by pushing the rear edge.

The vehicle has a cap-less fuel filler. Place the filler hose nozzle in position, straight into the filler neck and press with slight force to insert.

After the automatic cut-off, the tank can be topped up by operating the fuel pump a maximum of two more times.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle.

Close the filler door and allow it to engage.

Clean any spilled fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible.

Misfuel Inhibitor

⚠ Warning

Do not try to open the fuel filler neck flap manually. Disregarding this could lead to trapping of the fingers.

All vehicles are equipped with a misfuel inhibitor.

The misfuel inhibitor ensures the fuel filler neck flap can only be opened using the suitable fuel nozzle or a funnel for emergency refilling.

In case of an emergency, if refilling with a container the funnel must be used to open the cap of the filler neck.

The funnel is stowed in the load compartment under the floor cover or in the glove box.

Place the funnel in position straight into the filler neck and press with slight force to insert. Use the funnel to fill the fuel into the filler neck. After topping-up, dry the funnel and stow in the load compartment.

Diesel Fuel System Bleeding

If the fuel tank for diesel engines runs dry the fuel system must be bled to enable engine starting. See *Diesel Fuel System Bleeding* ⇨ *299*.

AdBlue

AdBlue® is a non-hazardous fluid that is injected into the exhaust system of diesel vehicles to reduce exhaust emissions.

AdBlue, also known as diesel exhaust fluid, is available from reputable fuel and automotive outlets, or from your dealer who can also assist with refilling.

⚠ Warning

Never add AdBlue directly to the fuel tank.

If AdBlue is added to the fuel tank, do not drive the vehicle or start the engine. Contact your dealer immediately.

AdBlue is not a fuel additive and never comes into contact with diesel fuel. It is stored in a separate tank.

The filler is behind the fuel door next to the regular fuel filler. It has a blue cap.

For more information and filling procedures, see *AdBlue (Diesel)* ⇨ *214*.

Trailer Towing

The word trailer is used throughout this section and includes all types of towed vehicles, such as caravans, boat trailers or any other special purpose trailer.

Towing

Handling, durability and economy may be affected by towing a trailer.

A Holden Dealer will assist with supply and installation of towing equipment.

Maximum towing capacities (kg)

Engine	2.0L 4 cyl Petrol	3.6L V6 Petrol	2.0L 4 cyl Diesel
Braked Trailer	1800	2100	1800
Unbraked Trailer	750	750	750

Note

Exceeding these values could affect your vehicle warranty.

Mandatory Equipment: Holden genuine towbar and Holden genuine wiring harness.

Overloading

Never exceed the loads given for the towing equipment fitted to the vehicle.

All mandatory equipment must be fitted, otherwise you may void the Vehicle Warranty, to the extent Holden considers the overloading or missing equipment to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Holden will not accept liability for defects occurring in towing equipment not marketed by Holden or for defects in the vehicle arising from the use of such equipment or for loss or injury caused by use of such equipment. The use of such equipment may void your vehicle warranty, to the extent Holden considers the non-recommended equipment affects the specifications or quality of your Holden vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

It is inadvisable to mix and match different brands of towing equipment, as equipment is usually designed as an integrated package.

⚠ Warning

When towing a trailer, exhaust gases may collect at the rear of the vehicle and enter it if the tailgate is open.

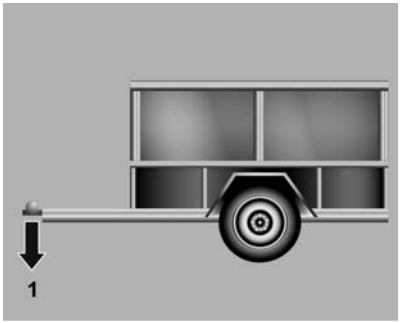
When towing a trailer:

- Do not drive with the tailgate open.
- Fully open the instrument panel vents and set the climate control to face or bi-level mode and outside air off.

For further information about carbon monoxide, see *Fuel* ⇨ *270*.

Trailer Recommendations

Tow Ball Load



A trailer hitched to a vehicle places a weight on the tow bar. This weight is called the tow bar ball weight or tow ball load (1).

- The tow ball load should be 4% – 10% of the trailer mass and a maximum of 90 kg.

Adjust by moving items forwards or backwards within the trailer, to change the balance.

Important: Tow ball load must not exceed 90 kg.

Check the tow ball load before coupling the trailer to the towing vehicle.

If the tow ball load is too light or too heavy, the steering and handling of the vehicle may be affected.

Axle loads must not be exceeded when the tow ball load is included. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *345*.

If maximum axle loads are exceeded, weight should be removed from the rear of the vehicle and transferred onto the trailer.

Ensure the weight of the packed trailer is not greater than the towing capacity of the Holden approved tow bar package fitted to the vehicle, or the vehicle's maximum towing capacity, which ever is lower.

Towing Precautions

- When towing, check and inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *318*.
- Tighten the tow ball retaining nut to 140 Nm (Newton metres) and check the torque frequently.
- Vehicles handle differently when towing. Take a couple of short distance trips with the trailer before taking a long trip.
- Have the vehicle and trailer correctly maintained and serviced, with particular attention given to the brakes, tyres, suspension, wheel bearings, towing coupling and lighting.
- Use an extended-arm mirror on both sides of the vehicle if necessary.
- Headlamps may need re-aiming after the loaded trailer has been hitched, particularly if a load distribution hitch is not used.
- Use a lower gear and the brakes, when descending steep hills.
- Do not use axle-mounted hitches.

- Ensure the tow bar does not obscure the rear number plate. Remove the tow bar tongue when not required for towing.
- If a tow bar is removed, have any mounting holes in the underbody sealed to prevent entry of exhaust fumes, dust and water.
- The anti-rattle bolt and nut should be removed when towing to prevent damage to the bolt or tow bar tongue.
- The parking assist may be automatically deactivated when towing a trailer. If not, turn it off while a trailer is attached. See *Parking Assist* ⇨ *237*.
- To avoid vehicle damage, the power tailgate may not operate with the RKE transmitter when a trailer is electrically connected.

Trailer Brakes

- Trailer brakes are mandatory on trailers with an Aggregate Trailer Mass (ATM) of more than 750 kg.
- Consult the appropriate regulatory body in your State or Territory for the legal requirements of trailer brakes.

Running-in When Towing

It is recommended that a new vehicle be driven for at least 1,500 km before towing.

If towing is necessary before this, do not exceed 80 km/h. This also applies if the vehicle is fitted with a new or reconditioned engine, transmission or rear axle.

Vehicle Maintenance

More frequent vehicle maintenance is required when using the vehicle to tow. Refer to the Service & Warranty Booklet in the vehicle's glovebox.

Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

The vehicle has a Trailer Sway Control (TSC) feature as part of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. If TSC detects the trailer is swaying, the vehicle's brakes are automatically applied.

When TSC is applying the brakes, flashes to notify the driver to reduce speed. If the trailer continues to sway, ESC will reduce engine torque to help slow the vehicle.

TSC will not function if ESC is turned off. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ *227*.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Accessories and Vehicle Modifications

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the warranty offered by Holden. Furthermore, such changes may impact fuel consumption, CO_2 emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and cause the vehicle to no longer conform to the type approval, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

Air Intakes

Do not fit any accessory over the upper or lower air intakes at the front of the vehicle, as this may affect engine cooling.

Holden Genuine Accessories are an exception, however they should be removed in high load and high temperature conditions.

Caution

In high load and high temperature applications (e.g. towing) no objects should be fitted over the upper or lower air intake at the front of the vehicle, as this could affect cooling. This includes removing Holden Genuine Accessories in this area, in these conditions.

Roo Bars

⚠ Warning

Fitting a roo bar may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling.

Roo bars should not be fitted to vehicles operating in suburban areas, as they may increase the risk of injury to a pedestrian in the event of a collision.

Vehicle Care

General Information
General Information 282
Accessories and Modifications 282
Vehicle Storage 282
Emission Information 282
Emission Control System 283

Vehicle Checks
Bonnet 284
Engine Compartment Overview 286
Engine Oil 291
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 293
Engine Coolant 294
Engine Overheating 296
Washer Fluid 297
Brakes 297
Brake Fluid 297
Battery 298
Diesel Fuel System Bleeding 299
Wiper Blade Replacement 300

Bulb Replacement
Bulb Replacement 300
Halogen Headlamps 301
Fog Lamps 302
Taillamps 305
Side Turn Signal Lights 310

Electrical System
Fuses 311
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 312
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 314
Rear Fuse Panel 316

Vehicle Tools
Tools 317

Wheels and Tyres
Tyres 318
Tyre Pressure 318
Tread Depth 319
Tyre Rotation 319
Buying New Tyres 320
Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance 320
Tyre Chains 321
Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit 321
Tyre Changing 325

Jump Starting
Jump Starting 331

Towing the Vehicle
Towing the Vehicle 333
Towing Another Vehicle 334

Appearance Care
Exterior Care 335
Interior Care 338
Floor Mats 338

General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine parts and trained and supported service people.

Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-genuine accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance, safety and durability.

These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Genuine Holden accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. See your dealer for assistance with the Genuine Holden accessories that are available for your vehicle.

Vehicle Storage

Storage for a Long Period of Time

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash and wax the vehicle.
- Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
- Fill the fuel tank completely.
- Change the engine oil.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Set shift lever to P (Park) to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Do not apply the parking brake.
- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.
- Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Beware that all systems are not functional, e.g. anti-theft system.

Putting Back into Operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Activate the electronics of the power windows. See *Power Windows* ⇨ *44*.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.

Emission Information

The emission control systems are designed to reduce the amount of hydrocarbons (HC), carbon monoxide (CO), and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) that are emitted from the engine and fuel system into the atmosphere. HC and NOx, when

exposed to sunlight under certain conditions, contribute to photochemical smog. In addition, CO is toxic to inhale.

Emission Control System

Major emission control systems the vehicle may have are:

- Evaporative emission control system. This system is designed to prevent the escape of fuel vapour from the fuel system and recycle the vapours through the normal combustion process.
- Crankcase emission control system. This system is designed to prevent blow-by gases from escaping into the atmosphere and recycle them through the combustion process.
- Exhaust emission control system. The various components of this system operate collectively to limit HC, CO and NOx emissions in the exhaust gas. The exhaust emission control system consists of components including electronic control of spark, fuel and idle speed. In addition vehicles have a catalytic converter and closed loop mixture control system.

It is recommended that service and repair to fuel or emission systems be carried out by your Holden Dealer.

Owner Responsibility

The engine, engine control system and exhaust system of the vehicle must NOT be modified in any way.

⚠ Warning

Any person who removes, modifies or hinders any part of the emission control system may be contravening Australian Design Rules. It is also illegal to drive a vehicle modified in this way.

Maintenance Requirements

Have the vehicle serviced at the frequency shown in the Maintenance Schedule in your Service & Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that servicing be carried out by a Holden Dealer who will maintain the vehicle's emission control system as per the Service & Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that all fluid levels are checked weekly.

Reducing Fuel Consumption

Engine

Have the vehicle serviced regularly in accordance with the Maintenance Schedule in the Service & Warranty Booklet.

Tyre Pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *349*.

Wheel Alignment

Maintain correct front and rear wheel alignment.

Warm-ups and Idling

Avoid long engine warm-ups. They are unnecessary and waste fuel.

Avoid long engine idling.

Accelerating, Driving and Braking

Accelerate gently and avoid rapid starts.

Drive the vehicle at steady speeds where possible (after running-in).

Riding the Brake

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal when you do not intend to brake.

Air Conditioning

Switch off the air conditioning when not required, however, once every 2 weeks, with the engine running, switch the air conditioning on for 5 to 10 minutes to lubricate the seals (even in winter).

Vehicle Checks

Bonnet

Opening

Pull the release lever and return it to its original position.

Move the safety catch lever to the side and open the bonnet.

The bonnet is held open automatically.

Note

If the bonnet is opened during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically for safety reasons. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *209*.

Performing Work

⚠ Warning

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off. The cooling fan may start operating automatically, even if the ignition is off.

⚠ Danger

The ignition system uses extremely high voltage. Do not touch.

Closing

Check there are no objects left in the engine compartment.

Lower the bonnet and let it fall into the latch from a low height (approx. 30 cm). Check the bonnet is engaged.

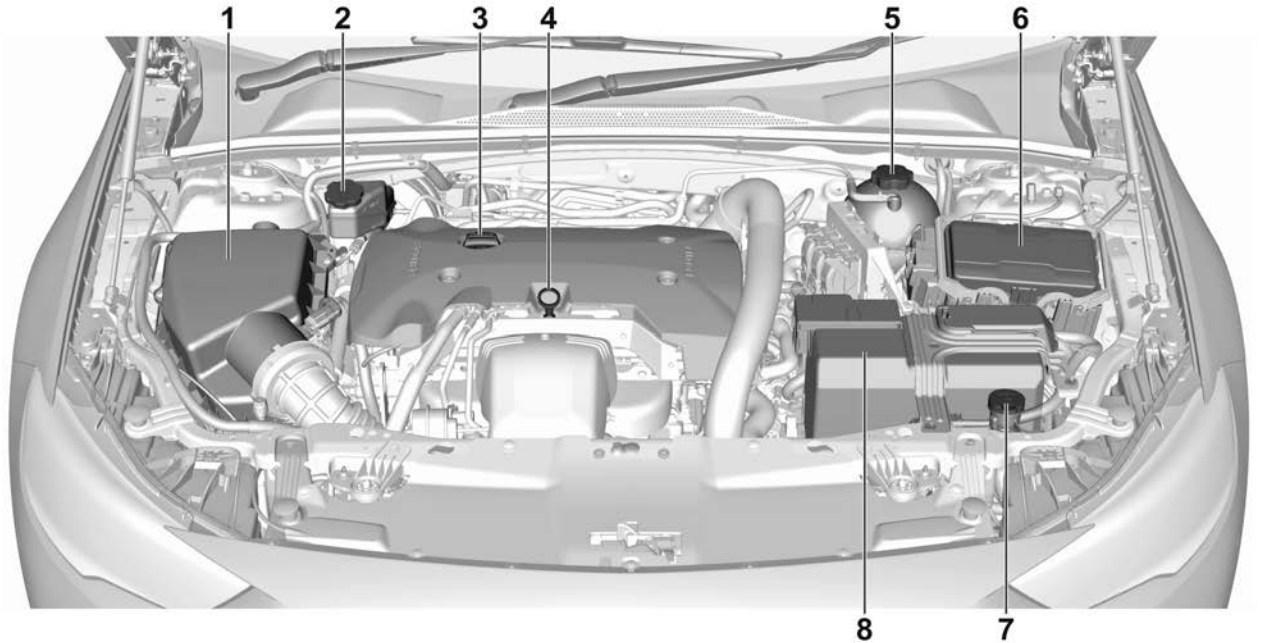
Caution

To avoid denting the bonnet panel, do not press the bonnet into the latch.

⚠ Warning

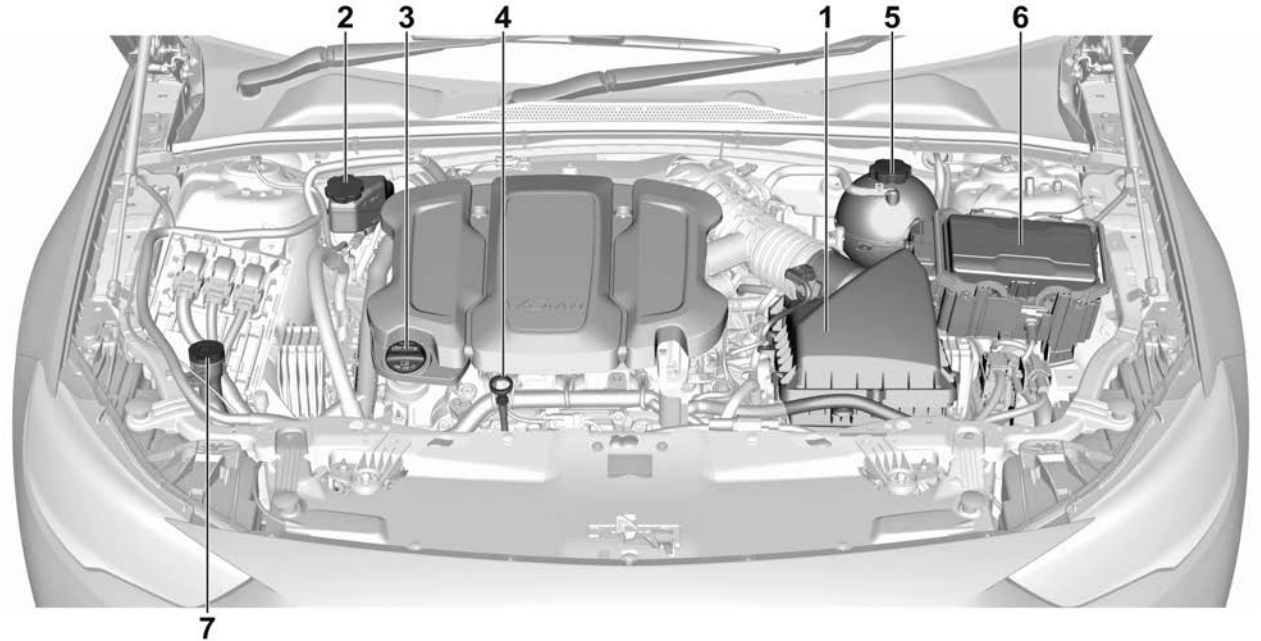
If while driving you notice that the bonnet has not been properly closed, pull the vehicle over to the side of the road at the earliest possible moment and close the bonnet correctly.

Engine Compartment Overview



2.0L Petrol Engine

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *293*.
2. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *297*.
3. Engine Oil Filler Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *291*.
4. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *291*.
5. Engine Coolant Tank. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ *294*.
6. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *312*.
7. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *297*.
8. *Battery* ⇨ *298*.

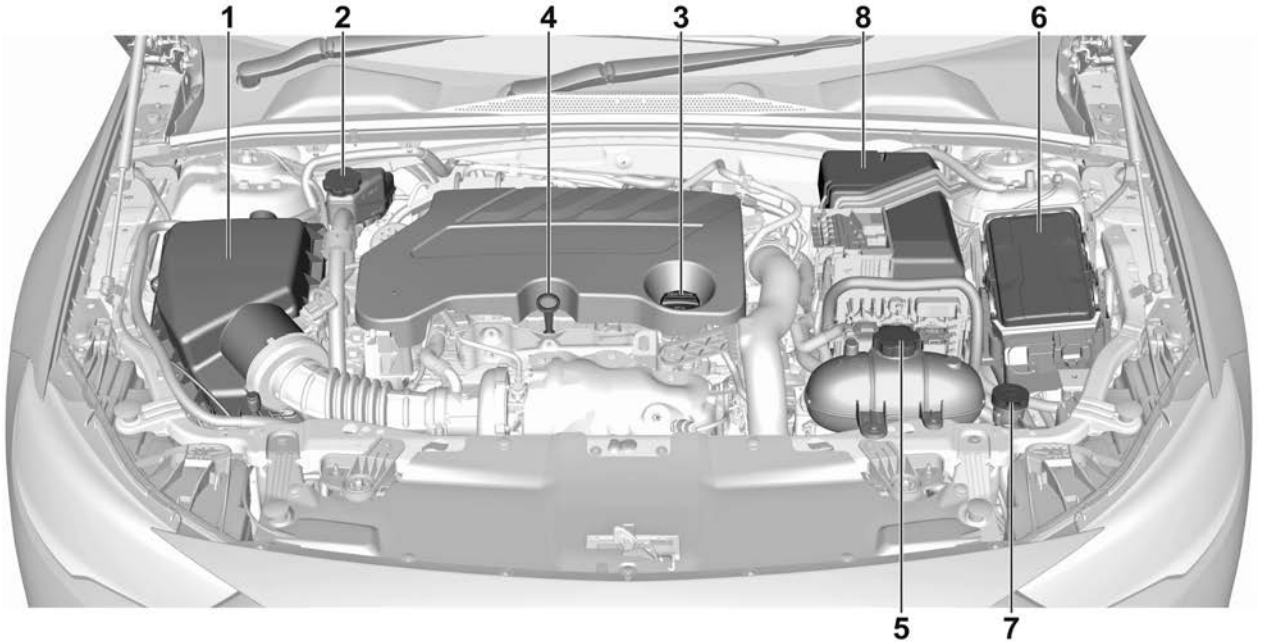


3.6L Petrol Engine

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *293*.
2. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *297*.
3. Engine Oil Filler Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *291*.
4. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *291*.
5. Engine Coolant Tank. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ *294*.
6. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *312*.
7. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *297*.

Note

The vehicle battery is located in the load compartment for vehicles with the 3.6L Petrol engine.



2.0L Diesel Engine

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *293*.
2. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *297*.
3. Engine Oil Filler Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *291*.
4. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *291*.
5. Engine Coolant Tank. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ *294*.
6. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *312*.
7. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *297*.
8. *Battery* ⇨ *298*.

Engine Oil

⚠ Danger

Engine oil is an irritant and if ingested can cause illness or death.

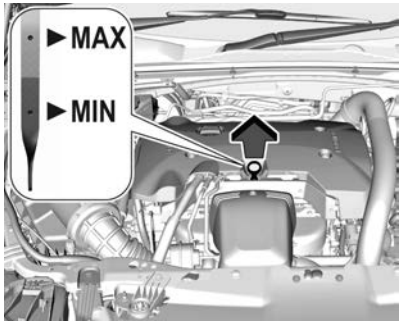
Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with skin.

Wash exposed areas with soap and water or hand cleaner.

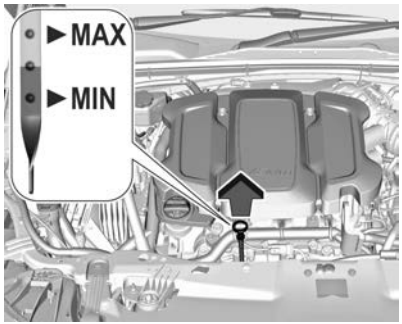
Checking Oil Level

The engine must be at operating temperature and the ignition turned off for at least 10 minutes.

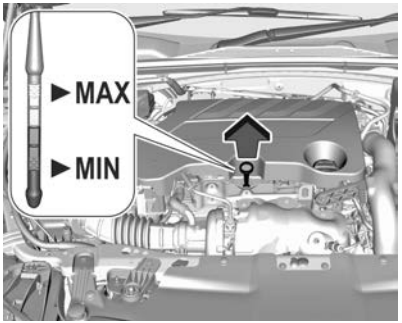
1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Remove the dipstick and wipe clean:



2.0L Petrol Engine



3.6L Petrol Engine



2.0L Diesel Engine

3. Reinsert the dipstick firmly.
4. Remove and read the oil level. The level should be between the MIN and MAX marks. Add oil if the level is at or below the MIN mark.

Dilution

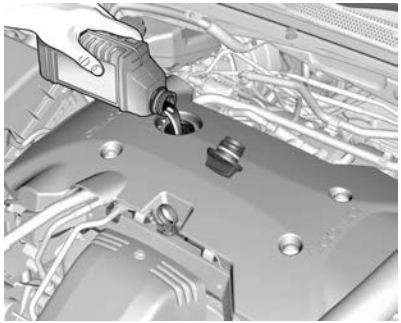
When a vehicle is frequently driven on short trips, the engine often fails to reach normal operating temperatures:

- The oil becomes diluted by fuel and moisture that settles in the oil pan.
- This may raise the oil level creating a false reading on the engine oil dipstick.

For example, in a vehicle that has accumulated 1,500 km of short distance or intermittent city operation and has consumed a normal amount of oil, the level may not have dropped from the upper area/mark, due to dilution. If this vehicle is driven for some distance at highway speeds the dilution elements evaporate, resulting in a sudden drop in oil level.

Adding Engine Oil

See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *341* and *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *349*.



1. Rotate the engine oil filler cap anticlockwise and remove.
2. Add enough oil to reach within the MAX mark.
3. Check the level on the dipstick and add further oil if necessary.

   The engine oil must not exceed the MAX mark.

Caution
Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out.

4. Replace the engine oil filler cap tightly by rotating clockwise.

Note

Non-detergent and other low quality oils, the use of break-in oil, tune up compounds, friction reducing compounds and other supplemental additives are not recommended. Their use increases costs, may be detrimental to the operation of the vehicle and may void the vehicle warranty, to the extent that Holden considers the non-recommended fluid to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle.

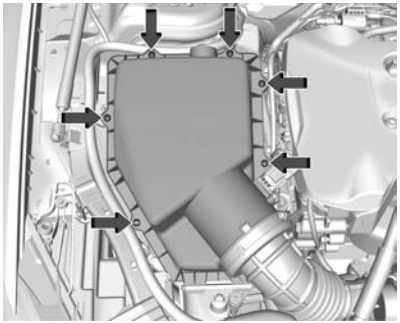
Engine Oil Change Intervals

Refer to the Service & Warranty Booklet.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

4 Cylinder Engines

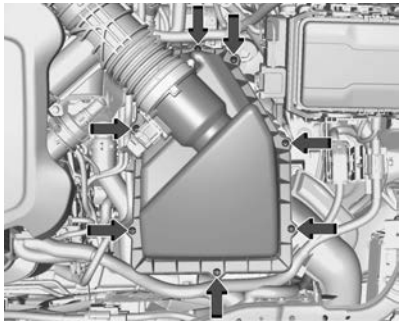
1. Loosen the hose clamp and disconnect the air outlet hose.



2. Remove the six screws and remove the air cleaner housing.
3. Lift out the air filter.

V6 Engine

1. Loosen the hose clamp and disconnect the air outlet hose.



2. Remove the seven screws and remove the air cleaner housing.
3. Lift out the air filter.

Engine Coolant

The cooling system allows the engine to maintain the correct operating temperature.

⚠ Warning

An under bonnet electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any under bonnet electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Do not touch heater or radiator hoses, or other engine parts. They may be very hot and can burn you. Do not run the engine if there is a leak; all coolant could leak out. That could cause an engine fire and can burn you. Fix any leak before driving the vehicle.

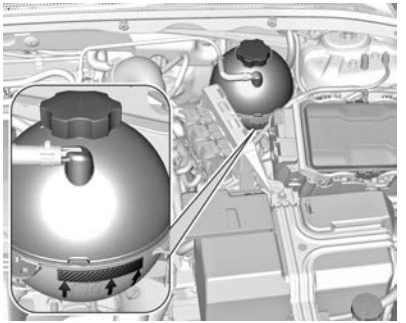
The engine cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DexCool® engine coolant mixture. This coolant needs to be checked and changed at appropriate intervals. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *341* and refer to the Service & Warranty booklet.

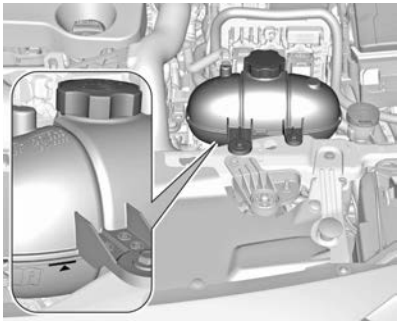
The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *296*.

Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

Check the coolant level in the engine coolant tank when the engine is cold.





Diesel Engine

When cold, the coolant level should be above the filling line on the front of the coolant tank. Top up if the level is low, see “Adding Coolant” further in this section.

Adding Coolant

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

you could be burned. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

Caution

Failure to follow the specific coolant fill procedure could cause the engine to overheat and could cause system damage. If coolant is not visible in the surge tank, contact your dealer.

The coolant tank pressure cap can be removed when the cooling system, including the pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

1. Turn the pressure cap slowly anticlockwise. If a hiss is heard, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.
2. Keep turning the pressure cap slowly and remove it.
3. Fill the coolant tank with a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DexCool to the area pointed to on the front of the coolant tank.
4. With the coolant tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot.

   Watch out for the engine cooling fans.

   By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more coolant mixture to the coolant tank until the level reaches the mark pointed to on the front of the coolant tank.
5. Replace the pressure cap tightly.

Caution

If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.

Engine Overheating

The vehicle has an engine coolant temperature gauge on the instrument cluster and overheat messages in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) to warn of engine overheating. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge* ⇨ *108*. The DIC also displays overheat messages.

The decision may be made not to lift the bonnet when the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the overheat zone or an engine overheat DIC message displays, but instead to get service help right away.

If the decision to lift the bonnet is made, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface. Then check to see if the engine cooling fan is running. If the engine is overheating, the fan should be running. If it is not, do not continue to run the engine. Have the vehicle serviced.

Caution

Do not run the engine if there is a leak in the engine cooling system. This can cause a loss of all coolant and can damage the system and vehicle. Have any leaks fixed right away.

If Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

If No Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

If an engine overheat warning is displayed but no steam can be seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day.
- Stops after high-speed driving.
- Idles for long periods in traffic.
- Tows a trailer.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the overheat zone and an overheat DIC message is displayed with no sign of steam:

1. Turn the air conditioning off.

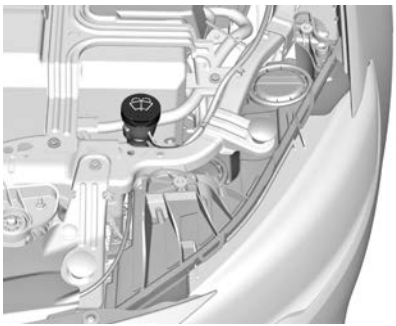
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. When it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral), and let the engine idle.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is no longer in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe distance from the vehicle in front. If the engine coolant temperature gauge does not go back to the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message does not display, continue to drive normally and have the cooling system checked for proper fill and function.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is still in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message still displays, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away. If overheat messages appear repeatedly, see your dealer.

If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the engine coolant temperature gauge is still in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message displays, turn off the engine until it cools down.

Washer Fluid



Note
4 cylinder shown, V6 on the opposite side.

Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved windscreen washer fluid.

Do not use ordinary soap or detergent as they may damage the windscreen wiper blade rubbers.

Ensure the cap is secured.

Brakes

In the event of the brake linings reaching their minimum thickness, a squealing noise sounds during braking.

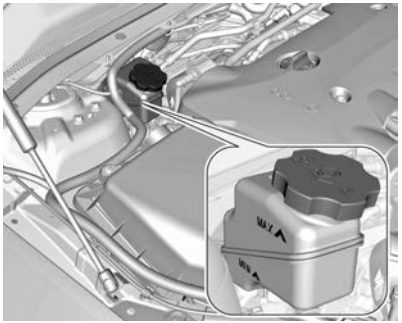
Continued driving is possible but have the brake lining replaced as soon as possible.

Once new brake linings are installed, do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

Brake Fluid

⚠ Warning

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive and will damage the paint finish of the vehicle if spilt.



The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks. If fluid level is below MIN, seek the assistance of a dealer.

Only top up with the specified brake fluid. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *341*.

Battery

⚠ Warning

Batteries emit an explosive gas mixture which may be ignited. Therefore, you should keep

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

sparks and flames away from the battery at all times. Never smoke near a battery.

Batteries contain sulphuric acid. If acid contacts skin or clothing, flush immediately with plenty of water. In case of eye contact, flush with plenty of water and contact a doctor immediately. Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash off immediately.

Take care with all metal objects and tools including items you may wear (for example jewellery, rings and metal watch bands) near battery terminals.

For vehicles with 4 cylinder petrol and diesel engines, the vehicle battery is located in the engine compartment.

For vehicles with the V6 petrol engine, the vehicle battery is in the load compartment behind the left-hand side trim.

There are connecting points for jump starting in the engine compartment. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *331*.

The vehicle battery is maintenance-free provided the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short-distance-driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Storing the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Ensure the ignition is turned off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

Vehicle Battery Replacement

Note

Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to temporary deactivation or disturbance of the stop-start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, ensure there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.

Ensure that the battery is always replaced by the same type of battery.

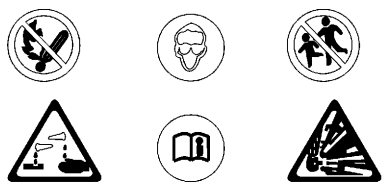
We recommend that you have the vehicle battery replaced by a dealer.

Vehicle Battery Charging

⚠ Warning

On vehicles with stop-start system, ensure the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 volts when using a battery charger. Otherwise the vehicle battery might be damaged.

Warning Label



Meaning of symbols:

- No sparks, naked flames or smoking.
- Always shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.
- Keep the vehicle battery out of reach of children.
- The vehicle battery contains sulphuric acid which could cause blindness or serious burn injuries.
- See the Owner's Manual for further information.
- Explosive gas may be present in the vicinity of the vehicle battery.

Diesel Fuel System Bleeding

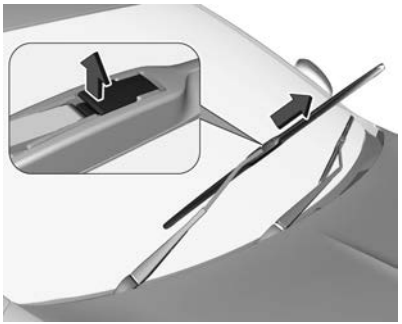
If the fuel tank has run dry, the diesel fuel system must be bled after refilling.

1. Turn the ignition on three times for 15 seconds at a time.
2. Crank the engine for a maximum of 40 seconds.
3. Repeat this process after no less than five seconds.

If the engine fails to start, seek the assistance of a dealer.

Wiper Blade Replacement

Windscreen



1. Lift the wiper arm until it stays in the raised position.
2. Lift retaining clip to disengage the wiper blade and remove.
3. Attach the replacement wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm. Push until it engages.
4. Lower the wiper arm carefully.

Rear Window

Sportwagon, Tourer

1. Lift the wiper arm.
2. Disengage wiper blade as shown in illustration and remove.
3. Attach the replacement wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm. Push until it engages.
4. Lower wiper arm carefully.

Bulb Replacement

Turn the ignition off and switch off the relevant lamp or close the doors.

Only hold a new bulb at the base. Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.

Use only the same bulb type for replacement. Replace headlamp bulbs from within the engine compartment.

After a bulb replacement, turn the ignition on, operate and check the lamps.

Bulbs to be Replaced by a Dealer

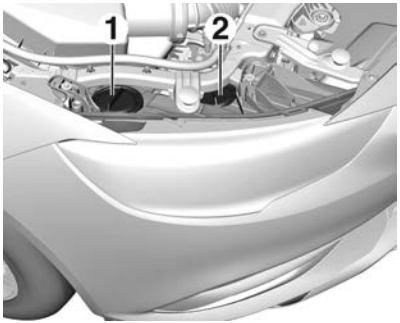
The following bulbs or LEDs should be changed by a dealer:

- Front turn signal lamps.
- Park lamps.
- Daytime running lamps.
- LED headlamps.
- LED tail and brake lamps
- LED number plate lamps.

- Interior and load compartment lamps.

Halogen Headlamps

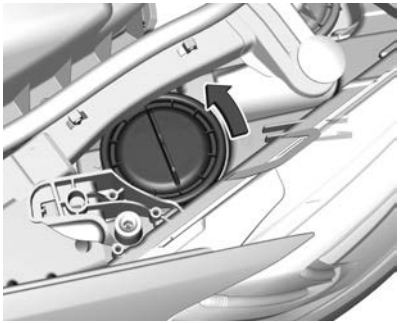
Halogen headlamps with separate bulbs for low beam and high beam.



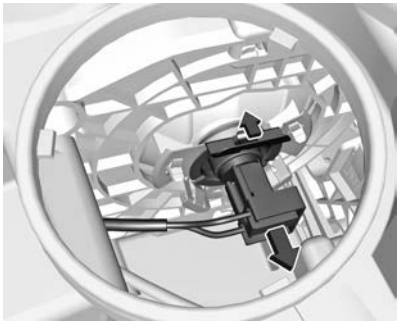
Low beam (**1**) – outer bulb.

High beam (**2**) – inner bulb.

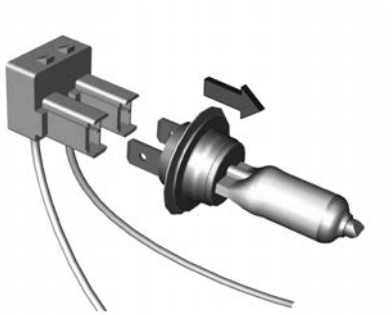
Low Beam



1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.

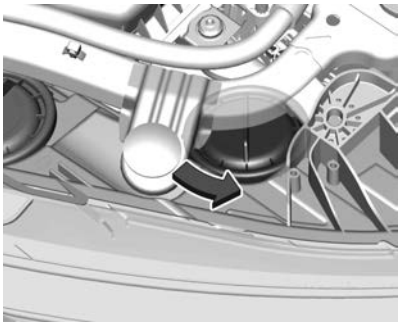


2. Disengage the bulb holder by pressing the retainer to the front. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector housing.

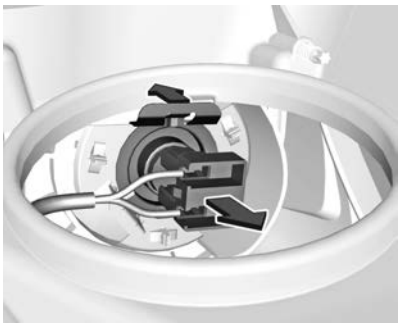


3. Detach the bulb from the bulb holder and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder.
5. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

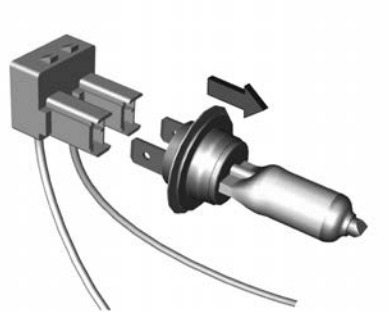
High Beam



1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.



2. Disengage the bulb holder by pressing the retainer to the front. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector housing.



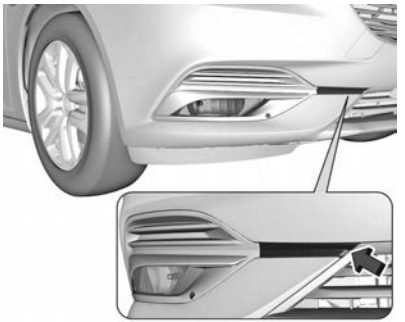
3. Detach the bulb from the bulb holder and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder.
5. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

Fog Lamps

Note

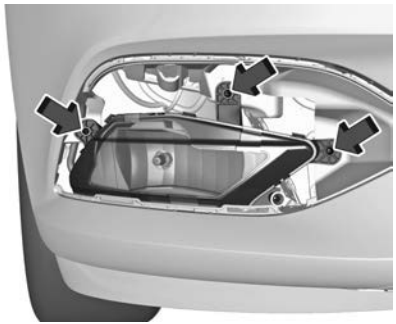
For rear fog lamps see *Taillamps* ⇨ *305*.

Liftback, Sportwagon



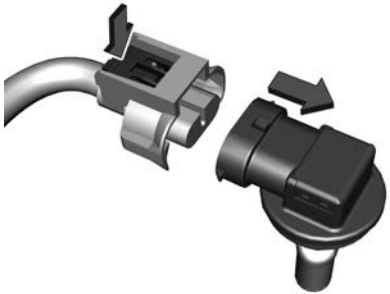
1. Disengage the cover with a screwdriver in the recess and remove the cover.

2. Remove the screw and remove the faceplate.



3. Remove the three screws and remove the lamp assembly to the front.

4. Turn the bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.



5. Disengage the plug connector by pressing the retaining lug.
6. Remove and replace the bulb unit and attach the plug connector.

Note

The bulb and the socket are one unit and are to be changed together.

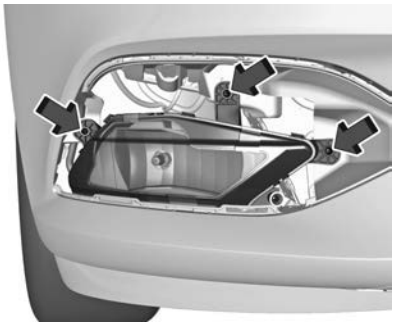
7. Insert the bulb socket into the lamp assembly by turning clockwise and engage.
8. Install the lamp assembly and tighten the three screws.
9. Attach the faceplate and tighten the screw.

10. Attach and engage the cover.

Tourer

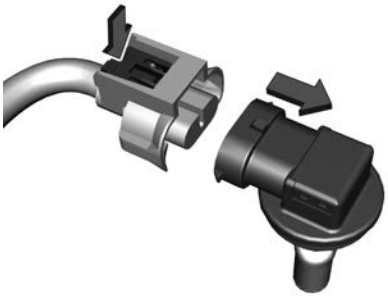
1. Remove the screw.

2. Lever out the faceplate with a screwdriver in the recess and remove the faceplate.



3. Remove the three screws and remove the lamp assembly to the front.

4. Turn the bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.



5. Disengage the plug connector by pressing the retaining lug.
6. Remove and replace the bulb unit and attach the plug connector.

Note

The bulb and the socket are one unit and are to be changed together.

7. Insert the bulb socket into the lamp assembly by turning clockwise and engage.
8. Install the lamp assembly and tighten the three screws.
9. Attach the faceplate and tighten the screw.

Taillamps

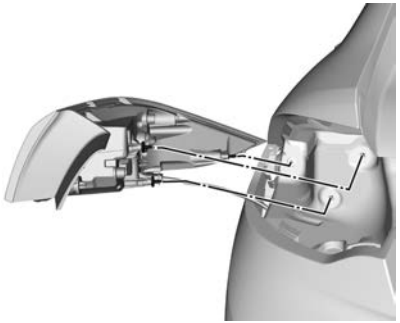
Rear Turn Signal, Reverse and Rear Fog Lamps

Liftback

Lamp in the Body

1. Remove the cover on that side.

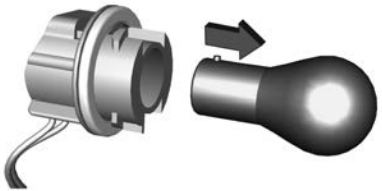
2. Unscrew the two plastic securing nuts from the inside by hand.



3. Carefully withdraw the tail lamp assembly from the recess and remove.

   Take care the cable duct remains in position.

4. Turn the turn signal lamp bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.

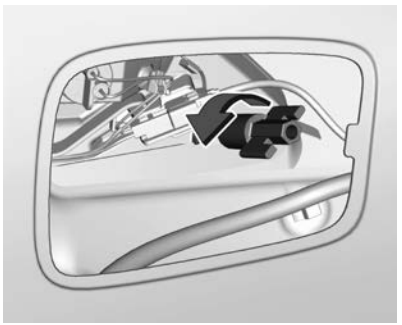


5. Remove and replace the turn signal lamp bulb.
6. Attach the bulb socket to the lamp assembly.
7. Attach the lamp assembly to the vehicle body and tighten the securing nuts from the inside of the load compartment.

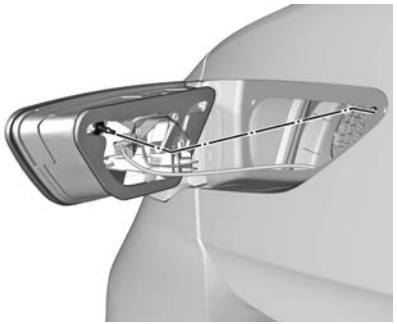
   Attach the cover.

Lamp in the Tailgate

1. Release the cover in the tailgate and remove it.

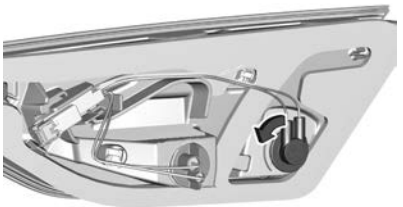


2. Unscrew the plastic securing nut by hand.

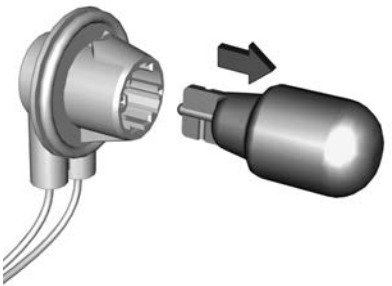


3. Carefully withdraw the lamp assembly from the recesses and remove.

   Take care the cable duct remains in position.



4. Turn the reverse lamp or rear fog lamp bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.



5. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
6. Insert the bulb socket into the tail lamp assembly.

   Fit the lamp assembly on the tailgate and tighten the screw from the inside.

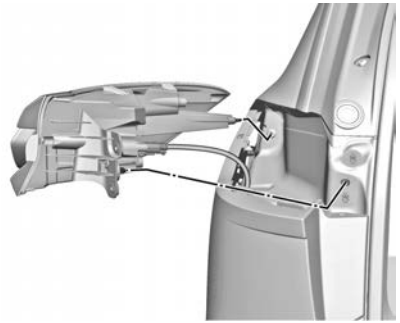
   Attach the cover.

Sportwagon, Tourer

Lamp in the Body

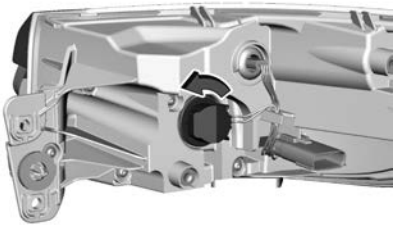
1. Open the covers with a screwdriver.

   Unscrew and remove both screws.

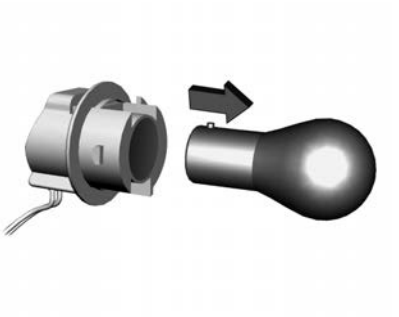


2. Carefully withdraw the tail lamp assembly from the recess and remove.

   Take care the cable duct remains in position.



3. Turn the turn signal lamp bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.



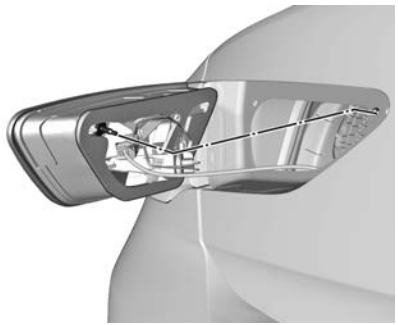
4. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the turn signal lamp bulb.
5. Attach the bulb socket to the lamp assembly.
6. Attach the lamp assembly to the vehicle body and tighten the screws.

   Close the covers.

Lamp in the Tailgate

1. Release the cover in the tailgate and remove it.

2. Unscrew the plastic securing nut by hand.



3. Carefully withdraw the lamp assembly from the recesses and remove.

   Take care the cable duct remains in position.

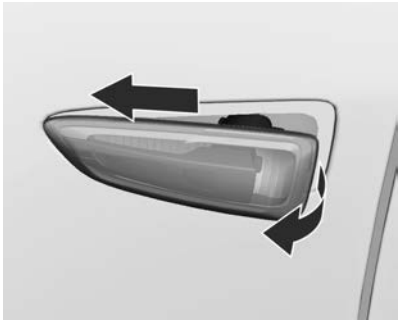
4. Turn the reverse lamp or rear fog lamp bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.

5. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
6. Insert the bulb socket into the tail lamp assembly.

   Fit the lamp assembly on the tailgate and tighten the screw from the inside.

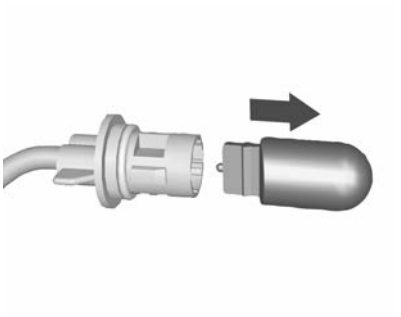
   Attach the cover.

Side Turn Signal Lights



1. Slide the lamp housing forward and remove it from the rear.

2. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove from the housing.



3. Pull the bulb from bulb holder and replace it.
4. Insert the bulb holder and turn clockwise.
5. Insert the front of the lamp, slide it forward and insert the rear into place.

Electrical System

Fuses

The replacement fuse rating must match the rating of the defective fuse.

Depending on model, there are up to three fuse boxes in the vehicle:

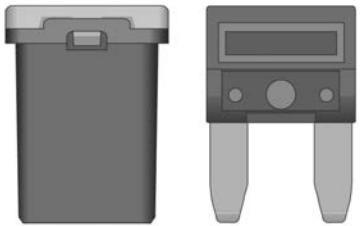
- Engine compartment.
- Instrument panel.
- Rear compartment.

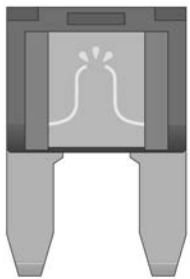
Before replacing a fuse, turn off the switch and the ignition.

A blown fuse can be recognised by its melted wire.

Caution
Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been rectified.

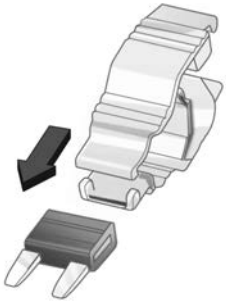
Some functions are protected by several fuses. Fuses may be fitted for some features not fitted to the vehicle.

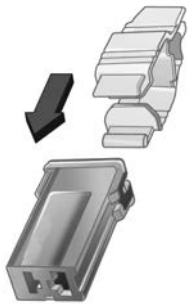




Fuse Extractor

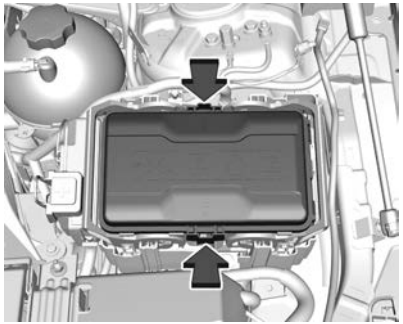
A fuse extractor may be located in the fuse box in the engine compartment.





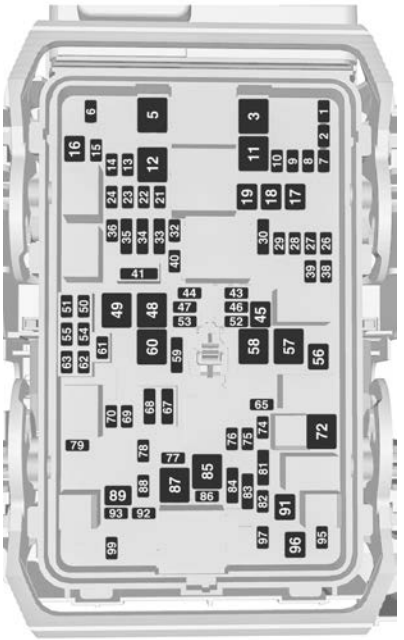
Place the fuse extractor on the various types of fuse from the top or side, and withdraw fuse.

Engine Compartment Fuse Block



The fuse box is in the front left of the engine compartment.

Disengage the cover and remove it.



Note

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses shown.

Fuses	Circuit
1	-
2	-
3	ABS
4	-
5	-
6	Tailgate
7	Fog light
8	Memory module
9	Heated windscreen
10	Seat lumbar
11	DC/DC battery
12	Heated rear window
13	Heated mirror
14	-
15	-
16	Front wiper
17	Power seat, passenger
18	Sunblind
19	Power seat, driver

Fuses	Circuit
20	-
21	Sunroof
22	Rear wiper / Airbag
23	Adaptive forward lighting
24	-
25	-
26	Transmission control module
27	Ignition/Instrument panel
28	-
29	Rear view camera / Air vent
30	Malfunction indicator light / Trailer
31	-
32	Camera
33	Seat heater, front
34	Seat heater, rear
35	Damping / All-wheel drive

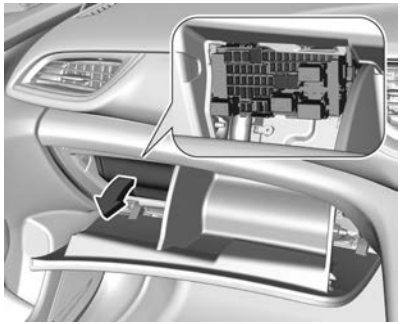
Fuses	Circuit
36	Fuel system
37	-
38	-
39	-
40	Steering column lock
41	-
42	-
43	Heated steering wheel
44	Headlight level adjustment
45	-
46	Engine control module
47	-
48	DC/DC converter / Air vent / EBoost
49	Rear door control module
50	-
51	-

Fuses	Circuit
52	-
53	-
54	-
55	-
56	Starter
57	-
58	-
59	Left headlight (LED)
60	Cooling fan
61	-
62	-
63	-
64	-
65	Climate control
66	-
67	-
68	-
69	Right high beam (Halogen) / Right headlight (LED)

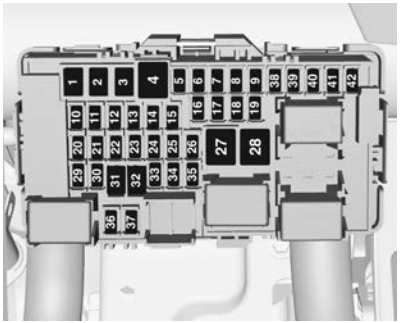
Fuses	Circuit
70	Left high beam (Halogen)
71	-
72	Starter
73	-
74	Transmission control module
75	Engine control module
76	Exhaust reduction system
77	-
78	Horn
79	Washer system
80	-
81	Engine control module
82	-
83	Ignition coil
84	Ignition coil
85	ECM
86	-
87	Diesel fuel heating
88	Air shutter
89	-
90	-
91	-
92	After boil pump
93	Electronic key system
94	-
95	Coolant pump
96	Diesel fuel heating
97	-
98	-
99	Coolant pump

After having changed the defective fuse, close the fuse box cover and press until it engages. If the fuse box cover is not closed correctly, a malfunction may occur.

Instrument Panel Fuse Block



The fuse box is located behind a cover in the glovebox. Open the glovebox and remove the cover.



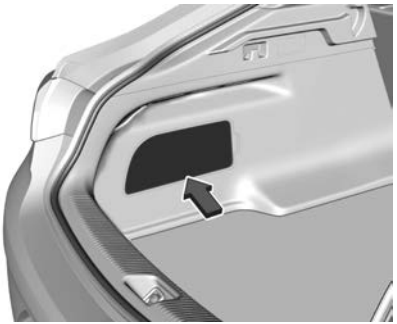
Note

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses shown.

Fuses	Circuit
1	Left power window
2	Right power window
3	Body control module
4	Climate control fan
5	Body control module
6	Trailer provisions
7	Rear seat power folding
8	Body control module
9	Engine control module
10	Head-up display
11	NOx reduction / Pipe heater
12	NOx reduction / Soot sensor
13	AdBlue module
14	Heated steering wheel
15	Transmission control module
16	Amplifier
17	Alarm
18	Body control module
19	AdBlue module
20	Body control module
21	Body control module
22	Body control module
23	Electric steering wheel lock
24	Airbag
25	Diagnostic connector
26	Power outlet load compartment
27	EBCM valve
28	Police provision
29	-
30	-
31	Steering wheel controls
32	Ignition switch
33	Climate control
34	Central gateway module
35	AUX / USB connector
36	Wireless charger
37	Rear wiper
38	OnStar module
39	Display
40	Parking assist
41	Overhead console

Fuses	Circuit
42	Radio

Rear Fuse Panel



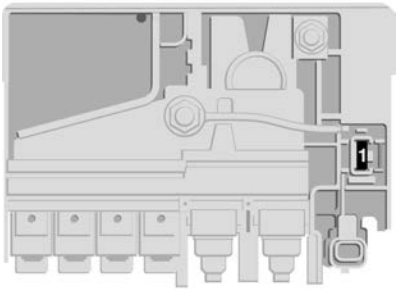
The rear compartment fuse boxes are located behind a cover in the left-hand side trim within the load compartment.

Note

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses shown.

Battery Fuse Block, V6

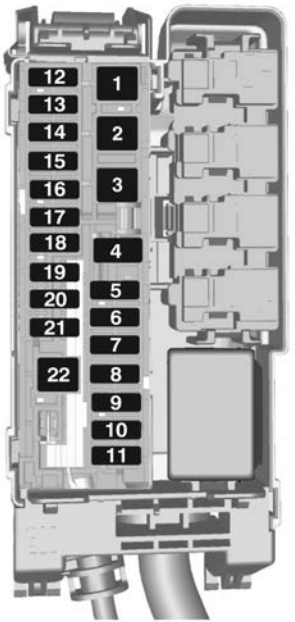
Remove the left-hand side trim cover and remove the battery fuse block cover.



Fuses	Circuit
1	Battery sensor module

Rear Fuse Block

Remove the left-hand side trim cover and remove the rear fuse block cover.



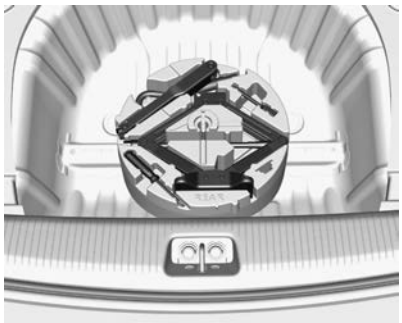
Fuses	Circuit
1	-
2	-

Fuses	Circuit
3	-
4	-
5	Hand-free tailgate sensor control module
6	-
7	-
8	Tailgate control module
9	-
10	-
11	-
12	Seat heater control module
13	Seat heater control module
14	-
15	Seat heater control module, rear
16	Seat heater control module, rear
17	-
18	-
19	-
20	-
21	-
22	Tailgate control module

Vehicle Tools

Tools

Vehicles with Spare Wheel



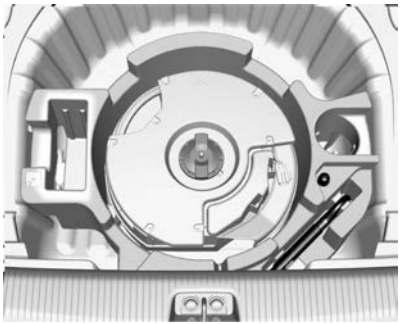
The jack, wheel wrench and if equipped, other items such as an extension bolt and/or retaining strap for securing a deflated wheel, the towing eye and a screwdriver are located below the floor cover in the load compartment .

Note

Vehicles without sub-woofer shown.

See *Tyre Changing* ⇨ *325*.

Vehicles without Spare Wheel



Items such as a screwdriver and the towing eye are located below the floor cover in the load compartment beside the sub-woofer.

See *Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *321*.

Wheels and Tyres

Tyres

Tyre and Rim Condition

- To avoid tyre and rim damage and possible tyre blow-out, do not drive over sharp edges.
- Drive over edges slowly and at right angles, if possible.
- When parking, ensure the tyres are not pressed against the edge of the kerb.
- Check the tyres regularly for damage, stones, punctures, cuts, cracks, bulges, etc. Also check the rims for damage. Contact a dealer if in doubt.

Tyre Pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures to avoid increased fuel consumption, uneven and premature tyre wear.

The correct pressures for tyres are shown on the tyre placard on the front passenger door frame and also in the tyre pressure table. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *349*.

Note

- Tyre pressure should be checked when the tyres are cold, as tyre pressure will increase as the tyres warm up.
- Check the air pressure of the tyres (including the spare) weekly, to ensure occupant safety, as well as reducing fuel consumption and increasing the life of the tyres.

- Check pressures when the vehicle has not been driven for over 3 hours. If tyre pressures must be checked immediately after driving more than 2 km, increase tyre placard pressure by 10%.
- Use a tyre pressure gauge to check the tyres. Simply looking at the tyres is not sufficient.
- Replace the valve dust caps.
- Check the condition of the tyre tread and inspect for stones or abnormal wear.
- For constant long distance driving, daily checking is recommended.

Tread Depth

Replace the tyres when:

- They are worn to the point where the tread indicators appear.

  The tyres originally fitted to the vehicle have built-in tread indicators. When only 1.5 mm of tread remains, these indicators show as plain bars across the tread pattern at regular intervals around the tyre.
- The tread or sidewall is cut, split, or cracked deep enough to expose the cord or fabric.
- The tyre has a bump or bulge in it, indicating some kind of internal damage.
- The tyre has a puncture, cut or other damage which cannot be repaired because of the size or location of the damage.
- The cord or fabric is showing.

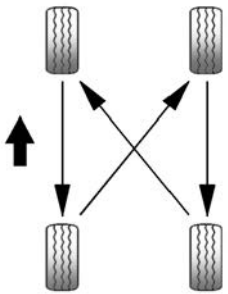
⚠ Warning

Do not attempt to drive on a flat tyre more than is necessary to stop safely. Driving even a short distance can damage the tyre and wheel beyond repair. Tyres which have been repaired or retreaded are not capable of being driven safely at high speeds. Therefore, their use is not recommended.

Tyre Rotation

It is recommended that you rotate tyres at every scheduled maintenance service.

Driving conditions, driving techniques, vehicle loading and weather may warrant more frequent tyre checks and rotation.



Front and rear tyres can wear differently depending on:

- Types of roads driven on.
- Driving habits.
- Tyre pressures.
- Wheel alignment and balance.

New tyres should be fitted in pairs to the front. If replacing only one tyre, pair it on the same axle with the least worn of the other three.

Buying New Tyres

Refer to the tyre placard on the vehicle or the table in this manual for tyre size and load rating.

See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *318* or *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *349*.

Using a different size or type of tyre may affect:

- Ride.
- Handling.
- Speedometer accuracy.
- Vehicle ground clearance.
- Vehicle payload capacity.
- Maximum vehicle speed.
- Tyre clearance.
- Tyre chain clearance.

Tyres with heavy treads and those made for better grip in the wet, should only be operated within the limits recommended by the manufacturer.

Tyres with a higher speed or load rating are acceptable, provided they are fitted to a suitable rim size.

⚠ Warning

Tyres with a lower speed or load rating are NOT acceptable for fitment to the vehicle.

Replacing the factory fitted wheels and tyres with non-genuine wheels and tyres may affect the Vehicle Warranty and possibly the vehicle's insurance policy.

Contact a Holden Dealer for advice on suitable tyres.

Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance

Improper wheel alignment or balance can cause:

- Tyres to wear fast and unevenly.
- The vehicle to pull to one side.
- Vibration.

If any of these problems exists, have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

Tyre condition is checked when the vehicle is serviced by a Holden Dealer. They are able to diagnose any unusual signs of wear. If tyres are rotated, it is recommended that balance be checked at the same time.

Tyre Chains

⚠ Warning

Tyre Chains are only permitted on front tyres of size; 225/55 R17.

- Use low profile chains that add no more than 12mm thickness to the tyre tread and inner sidewall.
- Use chains that are the correct size for the tyres.
- Install the chains on the tyres of the front axle only.
- Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- If the chains contact the vehicle, stop and re-tighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops. Driving too fast or spinning the wheels with chains on will damage the vehicle.
- Chains must not be fitted to a compact / temporary spare tyre.
- Check the tyres are inflated to the correct pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *349*

Whenever tyre chains are fitted, switch off the ESC. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ *227*.

Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit

The vehicle may have an emergency tyre sealant and compressor kit, in place of a spare tyre.

The repair kit:

- Repairs minor damage to the tyre tread or sidewall.

  Do not remove any objects that have penetrated the tyre.
- Repairs damage up to 4 mm in the tread area of the tyre.
- Does not repair damage at the tyre's side wall, near the rim.

Take the vehicle to a dealer to have the tyre repaired or replaced as soon as possible.

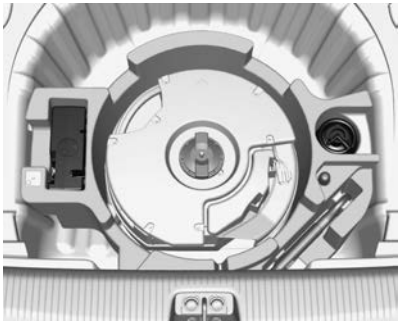
⚠ Warning

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.

Do not drive on the repaired tyre for an extended time. Steering and handling may be affected.

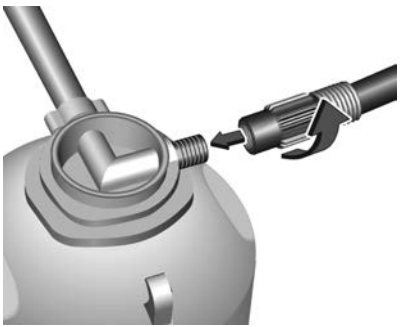
Temporary Puncture Repair

1. Apply the park brake.
2. Place the shift lever into **P** (Park).

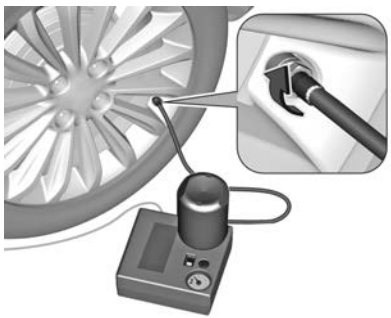


3. Remove the tyre repair kit from the load compartment, under the floor cover.
4. Remove the compressor and the sealant bottle.

5. Remove the electrical connection cable and air hose from the underside of the compressor.



6. Screw the compressor air hose onto the connection on the sealant bottle and fit the sealant bottle into the retainer on the compressor.
7. Set the compressor near the wheel with the flat tyre in such a way that the sealant bottle is upright.
8. Unscrew valve cap from flat tyre.



9. Screw the filler hose to the tyre valve.
10. Place the switch on the compressor to ◯.

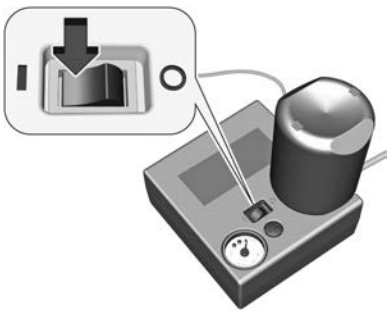
11. Connect the compressor plug to the vehicle's power outlet.
12. Start the engine and let it idle to ensure the battery does not run down.

Note

If running the engine, ensure the shift lever remains in **P**.

⚠ Warning

Do not run the engine in an enclosed area or with passengers in the vehicle.



13. Press the switch on the compressor to I.

    The tyre fills with sealant.

    The compressor pressure gauge briefly indicates up to 6 Bar (85 psi / 60 kPa) while the sealant bottle is emptying (approx. 30 seconds).

    The pressure starts to drop.

    Once the sealant is pumped into the tyre, the tyre is inflated.
14. The tyre pressure should be obtained within 10 minutes.
15. When the correct pressure is obtained, switch off the compressor.

⚠ Warning

Do not over-inflate tyres due to risk of injury or damage to the tyre.

- If the tyre pressure is not obtained within 10 minutes:

  Remove the tyre repair kit.

  Move the vehicle one tyre rotation.

  Reattach the tyre repair kit and continue the filling procedure for 10 minutes.

  Check tyre pressure once more. If the prescribed tyre pressure is still not obtained, the tyre is too badly damaged. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

- If the pressure is obtained within 10 minutes, adjust to the specified tyre pressure

by pressing the button next to the pressure indicator to increase or decrease.

⚠ Warning

If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 10 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant and air compressor kit cannot inflate the tyre. Disconnect and stow the tyre sealant and air compressor kit back in its original position. Contact a Holden Dealer.

16. Detach the tyre repair kit.

    Push the catch on the bracket to remove the sealant bottle from the bracket. Screw the tyre inflation hose to the free connection of sealant bottle. This prevents sealant from escaping.

17. Stow the repair kit in the load compartment.

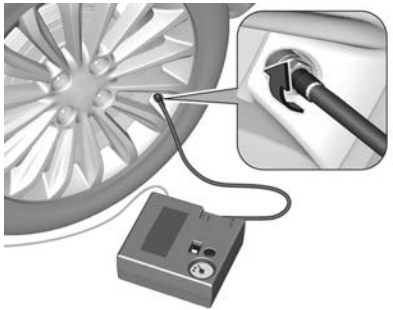
⚠ Warning

Always stow the tyre sealant and air compressor kit in its original position. Unsecured loads increase the risk of injury during heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres or a collision.

18. Remove any excess sealant using a cloth.
19. After inflating the tyre, remove the maximum speed label and place it in a visible location.

    It reminds you to drive cautiously and not to exceed 80 km/h until the damaged tyre is replaced or repaired.

20. Continue driving immediately so that sealant is evenly distributed within the tyre.
21. After driving approximately 10 km (but no more than 10 minutes), stop at a safe location to check the tyre pressure.



22. Screw the compressor air hose directly onto the tyre valve and compressor to check the tyre pressure.
23. If the tyre pressure is more than 1.3 Bar (19 psi / 130 kPa), set it to the correct value.
24. Repeat the procedure from Step 21 until there is no more loss of pressure.

    If the tyre pressure has fallen below 1.3 Bar (19 psi / 130 kPa), do not continue driving. Contact a dealer.

25. Stow the tyre sealant and compressor kit in the load compartment.

This is a temporary puncture repair. Take the vehicle to a dealer to have the tyre repaired or replaced as soon as possible.

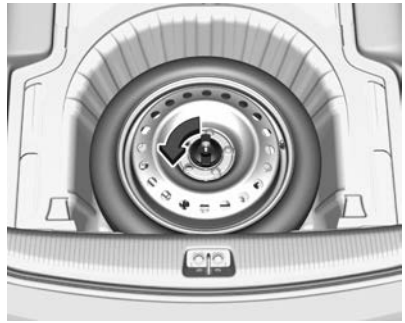
Note

- The driving characteristics of the repaired tyre is severely affected, therefore have this tyre replaced.
- If unusual noise is heard or the compressor becomes hot, turn compressor off for at least 30 minutes. The built-in safety valve opens at a pressure of approx. 7 Bar (100 psi / 70 kPa).
- The tyre sealant has an expiry date. After this date its sealing capability is no longer guaranteed. Pay attention to storage information on sealant bottle.
- Replace the used sealant bottle. Dispose of the bottle as prescribed by applicable laws.
- The compressor and sealant can be used from approx. -30 °C.
- The adapters supplied can be used to pump up other items, e.g. footballs, air mattresses, inflatable dinghies, etc. They are located on the underside of the compressor. To remove, screw on compressor air hose and withdraw adapter.

Tyre Changing

Some vehicles are equipped with a tyre sealant and compressor kit instead of a spare wheel. See *Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *321*.

The spare wheel is classified as a temporary spare wheel and corresponding speed limits apply. Seek the assistance of a dealer to check the applicable speed limit if you are unsure.



The spare wheel has a steel rim and is located in the load compartment beneath the floor cover.

Note

Vehicles with sub-woofer: The spare wheel is located beneath the sub-woofer.

To remove:

1. Open the floor cover.
2. Vehicles without sub-woofer: The spare wheel is secured with a retaining nut.

   – Turn the nut anticlockwise and remove the spare wheel.

Vehicles with sub-woofer: The sub-woofer and spare wheel are secured with a retaining nut.

– Turn the nut anticlockwise and remove.

– Disconnect the audio speaker wiring connector and remove the speaker. Place in a safe location.

– Remove the spare wheel.

The vehicle tools are located under or beside the spare wheel. See *Tools* ⇨ *317*.

3. After a wheel change:
   - Vehicles without a sub-woofer: Stow the full-size wheel in the spare wheel-well as described below.
   - Vehicles with a sub-woofer: Secure the tools and sub-woofer with the retaining nut and close the floor cover. Stow the full-size wheel in the load compartment as described below.
4. After changing the wheel back to the full size wheel, place the spare wheel back in the wheel-well and secure with the retaining nut.

Note

Vehicles without a sub-woofer: The spare wheel is stored outside-up with the tools underneath.

Vehicles with a sub-woofer: The spare wheel is stored outside-down with the sub-woofer seated on top and the tools beside.

⚠ Warning

Storing the jack, a wheel or other equipment in the load compartment could cause injury if they are not secured correctly. During a sudden stop or a collision, loose equipment could strike someone.

(Continued)

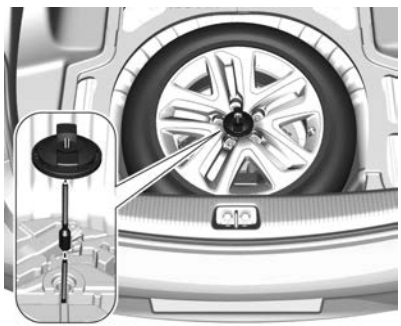
Warning (Continued)

Store and secure the wheel, jack and tools always in their original storage locations.

Stowing the Full Size Wheel

Vehicles without Sub-woofer

Secure a deflated full size wheel facing upwards with the retaining nut in the spare wheel-well after attaching an extension bolt on the thread bolt. The extension bolt is supplied with the vehicle tools.



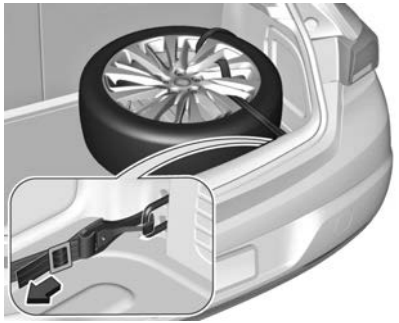
1. Attach the extension bolt onto the thread bolt.
2. Store the deflated wheel outside up in the spare wheel-well and secure it by turning the retaining nut clockwise on the extension bolt.

Vehicles with Sub-woofer

Secure a deflated full size wheel in the load compartment with the retaining strap supplied with the vehicle tools.

1. Refit the sub-woofer and tools as previously described.
2. Place the wheel in the load compartment facing up and close to one side of the load compartment.

3. Place the loop end of the strap through the front cargo tie-down on the appropriate side.
4. Place the hook end of the strap through the loop and pull it until the strap is fastened securely to the cargo tie-down.



5. Insert the strap through the spokes of the wheel as shown.
6. Attach the hook to the rear cargo tie-down.
7. Tighten the strap and secure it using the buckle.

⚠ Danger

Always drive with the rear seat backrests folded up and engaged when stowing a full size wheel in the load compartment.

Temporary Spare Wheel

Only fit one temporary spare wheel. Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.

If your vehicle gets a flat tyre on the rear while towing another vehicle, fit the temporary spare wheel in the front and the full sized tyre at the rear.

Tyre Changing

Note

Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture.

The jack is maintenance-free.

No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.

Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.

Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.

Clean wheel nuts and thread with a clean cloth before mounting the wheel.

If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.

Remove heavy objects from the vehicle before jacking.

⚠ Warning

All passengers must be out of the vehicle when it is being jacked.

Only jack the vehicle on hard, level surfaces.

Ensure moving parts of the jack are adequately lubricated before use.

Use the jack only at the designated lifting points. Use in other locations may result in the vehicle falling off the jack, or damage to the vehicle.

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Use the jack only for lifting the vehicle when changing wheels.

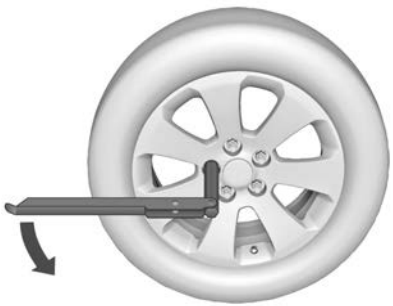
Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

The vehicle may have a steel temporary spare wheel. Drive carefully and do not exceed 80 km/h. Although the spare tyre was fully inflated when the vehicle was new, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly.

After installing the spare tyre on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible to check the inflation pressure is correct. Have the flat tyre repaired or replaced and installed back on the vehicle as soon as possible.

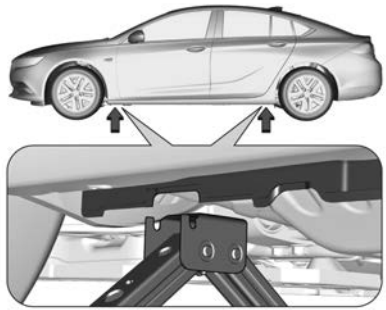
1. Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-slip surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
2. Apply the parking brake and engage **P** (Park).

   If required, switch the hazard warning flashers on.
3. Remove the spare wheel as previously described.
4. If fitted, remove the wheel nut caps with a screwdriver. To protect the wheel, place a soft cloth between the screwdriver and the wheel.

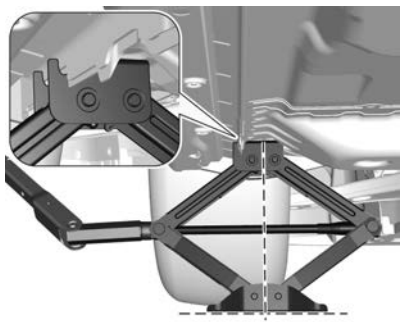


5. Fold out the wheel wrench and fit onto a wheel nut ensuring it locates securely. Loosen each wheel nut by half a turn.

6. Some models have side sill panels with vehicle jacking point covers. Pull off the jacking point cover before positioning the jack.

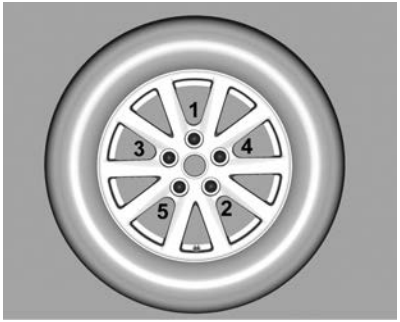


Position the jack under the vehicle jacking point closest to the wheel being changed.



7. Set the jack to the required height and position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.

8. Fit the wheel wrench onto the jack, and with the jack correctly aligned, rotate the wheel wrench until the wheel is sufficiently clear of the ground.
9. Unscrew the wheel nuts.
10. Change the wheel.
11. Fit the wheel nuts and tighten lightly.
12. Lower the vehicle.



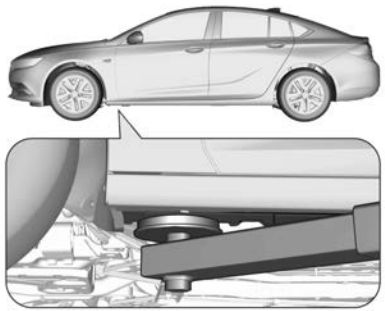
13. Fit the wheel wrench onto a wheel nut and ensuring it is located securely, tighten each nut as tightly as possible in a crosswise sequence.

⚠ Warning

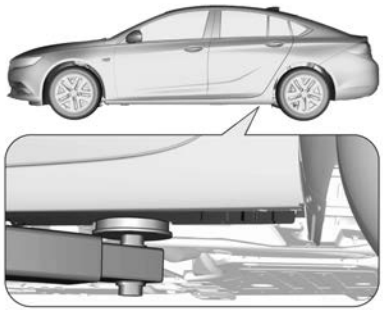
As soon as possible after changing a wheel, have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 140 Nm for all models except VXR. Tighten VXR models to 190 Nm.

14. Install the wheel nut caps, if fitted.
15. Install the vehicle jacking point covers, if equipped.
16. Stow and secure the replaced wheel and the vehicle tools.
17. Check the tyre pressure of the installed wheel as soon as possible. Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired as soon as possible.

Lifting Position for Hoist



Front arm position of the lifting arm pad centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.



Rear arm position of the lifting arm pad centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.

Jump Starting

⚠ Warning

Vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be push or tow started. Therefore, if the battery is flat, jump start the vehicle.

Batteries produce explosive gases, contain corrosive acids and supply levels of electrical current high enough to cause burns. Therefore, adhere to the following when working near a battery:

- Do not attempt jump starting directly from the battery.
- Do not let the jumper lead clamps touch each other or other metal parts.
- Do not allow the jumper leads to contact any rotating engine components.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Do not use open flames or sparks near the battery.
- Do not smoke near the battery.
- Never use a quick charger to start the engine.
- The battery must be removed from the vehicle for recharging.
- Only use the recommended battery otherwise the vehicle systems may not work correctly. Refer to a dealer for battery replacement.
- Wear eye protection such as safety glasses and avoid leaning over the battery.
- Battery acid is corrosive. If it gets on your skin, wash with plenty of water immediately. If it gets in your eyes you should not only flush with

(Continued)

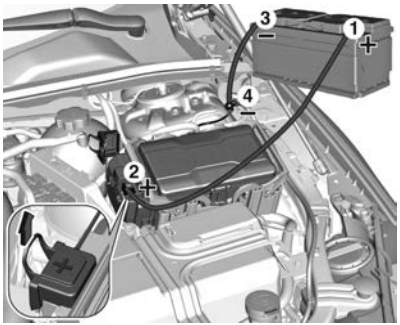
Warning (Continued)

lots of water, but should also seek medical help. Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash it off immediately.

- Remove rings, metal watch bands and other metal jewellery before working around the battery.

A vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery can be started using jump leads and the vehicle battery of another vehicle.

- Use jump leads with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 16 mm^2 (25 mm^2 for diesel engines).
- Do not disconnect the discharged vehicle battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers such as the headlights, etc.
- The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.
- Apply the parking brake, and place the transmission in **P** (Park).



Open the positive terminal protection caps of both vehicle batteries.

Lead connection order:

1. Connect the red lead to the booster battery positive terminal.
2. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
3. Connect the black lead to the booster battery negative terminal.
4. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point of your vehicle in the engine compartment.

Route the leads so they cannot catch on moving parts in the engine compartment.

To start the engine:

1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After five minutes, start the other engine.
3. Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of one minute.
4. Allow both engines to idle for approx. three minutes with the leads connected.

5. Switch on electrical consumers, e.g. headlights, heated rear window, of the vehicle receiving the jump start.
6. Reverse the above sequence exactly when removing leads.

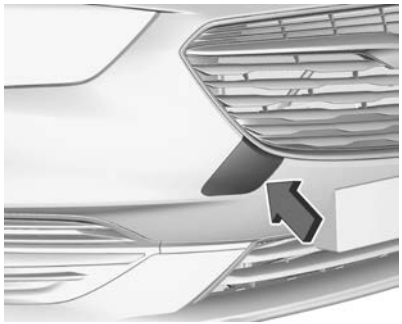
Towing the Vehicle

To avoid causing damage, a flat-bed tow truck is the best method of towing the vehicle .

If a flat-bed tow truck is not available, use a standard tow truck in the following configuration:

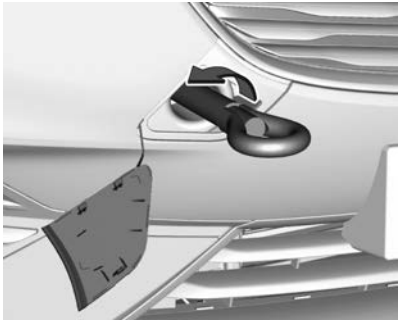
- For front-wheel drive vehicles: Raise the front of the vehicle with the rear wheels in contact with the road.
- For all-wheel drive vehicles: Raise the front of the vehicle and use a towing dolly to prevent the rear wheels contacting the road.
- Raise the rear of the vehicle and use a towing dolly to prevent the front wheels contacting the road.

Where a tow truck is not available, the vehicle can be towed as follows.



Disengage the cap at the slot and remove downwards.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools. See *Tools* ⇨ *317*.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

As required, attach a tow rope or similar to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.

Turn the ignition on to release steering wheel lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windscreen wiper. Move the shift lever to neutral. Release the parking brake.

Caution
Drive slowly. Accelerate smoothly and do not jerk the tow rope.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

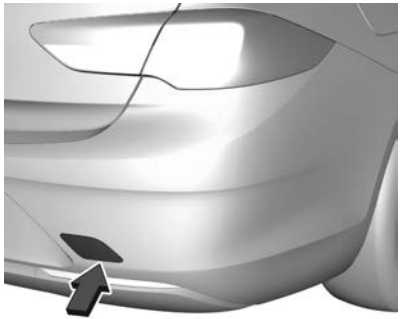
To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.

The vehicle must be towed facing forwards. If the vehicle is towed with all four wheels on the ground, the maximum speed is 50 km/h and for a maximum of 50 km. If the front axle has been raised, the maximum speed is 50 km/h. There is no distance limitation.

Seek the assistance of a dealer.

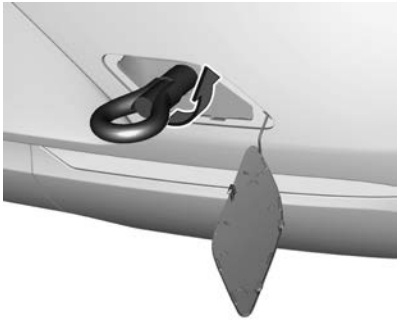
After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap with the outer flange into the recess and fix cap by pushing.

Towing Another Vehicle



Disengage the cap at bottom and remove downwards.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools. See *Tools* ⇨ *317*.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

The lashing eye at the rear underneath the vehicle must never be used as a towing eye.

Attach a tow rope or similar to the towing eye. The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

Caution
Drive slowly. Accelerate smoothly and do not jerk the tow rope.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert the cap with the upper flange into the recess and fix the cap by pushing. Stow the towing eye with the vehicle tools.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Washing

The paintwork of the vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a programme that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage. Failure to do so may result in permanent damage, particularly in hot weather conditions.

Road bloom is a gradual build up of road and environmental grime. This should be removed with a paint cleaner once a year, in addition to normal washing.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. Never use an automatic wash that requires anything

touching the paint (other than water). The wipers must be switched off. Remove the antenna and external accessories.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, ensure the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a Holden Dealer.

Caution

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and chamois off the vehicle. Rinse the chamois frequently. Use a separate chamois for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

⚠ Warning

Take care when moving the vehicle after washing, in case water has affected the brakes. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected. To dry them quickly, lightly apply the brakes while maintaining a slow forward speed with a clear area ahead, until brake performance returns to normal.

Exterior Lamps

Headlamp and other lamp covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive, solvent based cleaners or caustic agents and do not dry-clean them.

Caution

Condensation may temporarily appear on the inside of exterior lamp lenses after rain or washing the vehicle. Condensation occurs when there is a temperature difference between the inside and outside of the lamp allowing a fine mist on the inside surface of the lamp lens. This condensation will disappear when the vehicle is in a dry environment or the lamp is on. If water does collect in the lamp contact a Holden Dealer.

Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the bonnet and windscreen, and below the front bumper when washing the vehicle.

Polishing and Waxing

Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads).

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

Windows and Windscreen Wiper Blades

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

- Never use abrasive cleaners to clean glass.
- Refer to a Holden Dealer for windscreen washer additive.
- Old wiper blades can cause windscreen scratching. Regularly inspect and replace them.

Caution

Do not operate the wiper blades by hand as this damages the wiper drive mechanism.

When cleaning the rear window, make sure the heating element inside is not damaged.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner.

Wheels and Tyres

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

- Remove oil and grease with soap and water or detergent.
- Do not use petrol to clean tyres.
- Use a good quality tyre and bumper shine if required.
- A good quality wheel cleaner can be used for cleaning alloy wheels.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners.

Paintwork Damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.

Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by your Holden Dealer.

Caution

Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

Underbody

Substances can cause rust under the vehicle.

- Hose the underbody with clean water whenever the vehicle is washed.
- Where the vehicle is exposed to heavy concentrations of corrosive materials, inspect and wash the complete underbody at least once each year, preferably after winter exposure.

Interior Care

⚠ Warning

Many cleaning products are toxic, flammable or may damage the interior. When cleaning the interior, avoid volatile cleaners such as acetone, lacquer thinners, enamel reducers, nail polish removers, or cleaners such as laundry soaps, bleaches or reducing agents. Never use carbon tetrachloride, petrol or naphtha for any cleaning purpose. Ensure that the vehicle is well ventilated while using any cleaners and always follow the cleaning product manufacturer's recommendations. Water based cleaners, rather than solvent based cleaners, are recommended.

Steam cleaning of seats is not recommended.

Interior and Upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

The instrument panel should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clean seat belts with a mild, nonabrasive soap and lukewarm water.

After washing thoroughly, sponge the solution out of the belts.

Caution

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.

Plastic and Rubber Parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high pressure jet cleaners.

Floor Mats

- Pull the mat up at each retainer to remove the mat.
- Push the mat down onto the retainers to replace.

⚠ Warning

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the accelerator pedal and/or brake pedal. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury.

Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal.

Genuine Holden Accessory floor mats are designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that Holden approved floor mats be purchased.
Non-genuine floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal. Always check the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver's side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver's side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

Service and Maintenance

General Information
Service Information 340

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 341

General Information

Service Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the correct intervals as specified.

Refer to your Service & Warranty booklet for the service schedules and for more information.

Engine Oil Life System

The vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include engine revolutions, engine temperature and kilometres driven.

Based on driving conditions, the kilometres at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably.

For the oil life system to work correctly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed. When the system has calculated the oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1000 km.

It is possible that if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may indicate that an oil change is not necessary for a longer period than that shown in the service schedule. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed in accordance with the service schedules outlined in the Service & Warranty booklet.

A Holden dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system.

To reset the system yourself after an oil change, see *Service Display ⇨ 108*.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Engine Type	2.0L 4 Cyl Petrol	3.6L V6 Petrol	2.0L 4 Cyl Diesel
Engine oil	5W-30 dexos (dexos1 Gen 2)		5W-30 or 5W-40 dexos (dexos2)
Diesel exhaust fluid	-	-	AdBlue® meeting ISO standard 22241-1 See *AdBlue (Diesel)* ⇨ *214*
Coolant	50% clean fresh water and 50% Dexcool® anti-freeze coolant		
Automatic transmission fluid	Dexron® VI		Aisin AW–1 (GM Part No. 93165147)
Differential oil (AWD)	Refer to your dealer		
Transfer case oil (AWD)	Refer to your dealer		
Brake fluid	DOT 4 hydraulic brake fluid conforming to GMW3356		

Technical Data

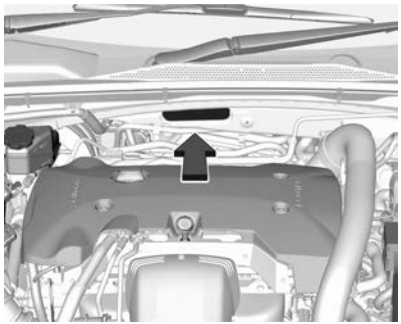
Vehicle Identification
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 342
Engine Identification 343
Identification Labels 344

Vehicle Data
Engine Data 345
Vehicle Weight 345
Vehicle Dimensions 348
Capacities and Specifications 349
Tyre Pressure 349

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

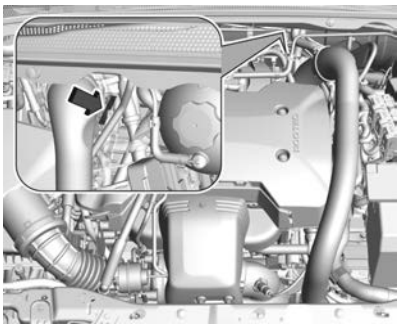
The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is visible through the windscreen.



The VIN is also stamped in the engine compartment on the firewall. It is also included on the vehicle compliance label.

Engine Identification

2.0L Petrol Engine

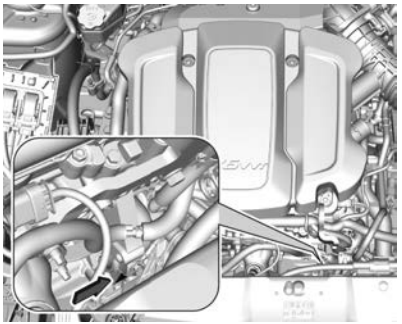


The engine serial number is located on the vehicle rear side of the engine block.

Note

An identification label containing the engine number may also affixed to the engine.

3.6L Petrol Engine

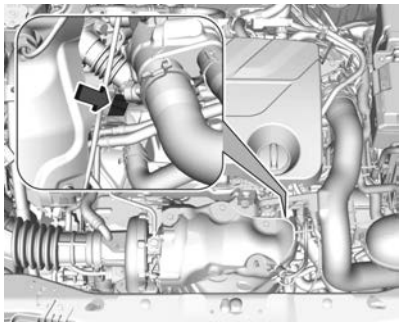


The engine serial number is located on the vehicle front side of the engine block.

Note

An identification label containing the engine number may also affixed to the engine.

2.0L Diesel Engine



The engine serial number is located on the vehicle front side of the engine block.

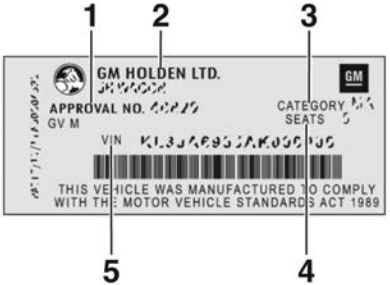
Note

An identification label containing the engine number may also affixed to the engine.

Identification Labels

Compliance Label

The vehicle compliance label is located on the front left door frame.



Information on the compliance label:

1. Approval number.
2. Manufacturer and vehicle model.
3. Category.
4. Number of seats.
5. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Identification Label

An identification label is located on the front left door frame.

Built Date Label

The build date label is located on the front left door frame.

Vehicle Data

Engine Data

Engine type	2.0L 4 Cyl Petrol	3.6L V6 Petrol	2.0L 4 Cyl Diesel
Engine	1998 cc	3649 cc	1956 cc
Engine power and torque	Refer to holden.com.au		
Fuel type	Petrol		Diesel
Octane rating (RON)*			
Recommended:	Premium unleaded 95	Unleaded 91	Diesel meeting Euro Standard EN590
Possible:	Unleaded 91** or premium unleaded 98	Premium unleaded 95 or 98	
Ethanol compatibility	E10		—
Biodiesel compatibility	—		B20

*: For further information see *Recommended Fuel* ⇨ *272*.

**: The use of unleaded petrol of regular 91 RON rating may be used where 95 RON is not available, however a small reduction in performance may be noticed.

Vehicle Weight

Overloading is a safety hazard and could also shorten the life of the vehicle.

Maximum Vehicle Carrying Capacity

Liftback

Engine	Model	Occupants (Average 68 kg each)	Luggage and Accessories (kg)	Total Load (kg)
2.0L 4 Cyl Petrol	LT	5	200	540
	RS	5	181	521
	Calais	5	180	520
3.6L V6 Petrol	RS	5	223	563
	RS-V	5	219	559
	Calais-V	5	169	509
	VXR	5	158	498
2.0L 4 Cyl Diesel	LT	5	202	542
	Calais	5	182	522

Sportwagon / Tourer

Engine	Model	Occupants (Average 68 kg each)	Luggage and Accessories (kg)	Total Load (kg)
2.0L 4 Cyl Petrol	LT	5	292	632
	RS	5	266	606
3.6L V6 Petrol	RS-V	5	295	635
	Calais Tourer	5	285	625
	Calais Tourer-V	5	228	568
2.0L 4 Cyl Diesel	LT	5	228	568

Note

- The carrying capacity assumes that no accessories are fitted. If accessories are fitted, the carrying capacity must be decreased accordingly.
- Axle limits must not be exceeded. See “Axle Loads” later in this section.

Axle Loads

Maximum Front and Rear Axle Loads

Do not exceed the maximum axle loads, including the weight of any options or accessories fitted to the vehicle. Take the roof rack load into account when determining the rear axle load. Weigh at a weighbridge if unsure.

Engine	Model	Front Axle Load (kg)	Rear Axle Load (kg)
2.0L 4 Cyl Petrol	Liftback	1060	1005
	Sportwagon / Tourer	1060	1125
3.6L V6 Petrol	Liftback	1125	1120
	Sportwagon / Tourer	1120	1230
2.0L 4 Cyl Diesel	Liftback	1120	1025
	Sportwagon / Tourer	1095	1100

Vehicle Dimensions

Variant	Length	Width Incl. Mirrors	Height	Wheelbase	Track: Front	Track: Rear
Liftback	4907	2093	1468	2829	1596	1599
Sportwagon	4996	2093	1514	2829	1596	1599
Tourer	5004	2093	1535	2829	1596	1599

The above figures are based on design dimensions.

Capacities and Specifications

Engine	2.0L 4 Cyl Petrol	3.6L V6 Petrol	2.0L 4 Cyl Diesel
Engine Oil (Refill incl. filter)	4.7 L	5.7 L	4.9 L
Coolant	5.0 L	9.0 L	5.9 L
AdBlue (Diesel exhaust fluid)	—	—	15 L
Fuel Tank	61.0 L		

All capacities are approximate

Tyre Pressure

2.0L 4 Cylinder Petrol

Tyre Size	Wheel Size and Profile	Recommended Pressure (kPa/PSI)						
		Front			Rear			Spare
		Comfort	ECO	Full	Comfort	ECO	Full	—
225/55 R17 SL 97W 245/45 R18 SL 96W	17 x 7.5J 18 x 8.5J	230/33	270/39	260/38	230/33	270/39	290/42	—
T125/80 R16 SL 97M T125/70 R17 SL 98M	16 x 4.0 17 x 4.0	—	—	—	—	—	—	420/60

2.0L 4 Cylinder Diesel

Tyre Size	Wheel Size and Profile	Recommended Pressure (kPa/PSI)						
		Front			Rear			Spare
		Comfort	ECO	Full	Comfort	ECO	Full	—
225/55 R17 SL 97W 245/45 R18 SL 96W	17 x 7.5J 18 x 8.5J	220/32	270/39	260/38	220/32	270/39	290/42	—
T125/70 R17 SL 98M	17 x 4.0	—	—	—	—	—	—	420/60

3.6L V6 Petrol

Tyre Size	Wheel Size and Profile	Recommended Pressure (kPa/PSI)						
		Front			Rear			Spare
		Comfort	ECO	Full	Comfort	ECO	Full	—
245/45 R18 SL 96W 235/50 R18 SL 97W 245/35 R20 XL 95Y	18 x 8.5J 18 x 8.0J 20 x 8.5J	260/38	270/39	280/41	240/35	270/39	320/46	—
T125/70 R17 SL 98M	17 x 4.0	—	—	—	—	—	—	420/60

Customer Information

Customer Information
Trademarks and Licence Agreements 351
Owner Assistance 352

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy
Event Data Recorders 353

Customer Information

Trademarks and Licence Agreements

Dexos, Dexron, DexCool

Dexos®, Dexron®, and Dexcool® and their associated logos are registered trademarks of General Motors LLC.

AdBlue

Adblue® is a registered trademark of Verband der Automobilindustrie (VDA).

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logo are registered trademarks and are owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Made for iPod iPhone

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.

iPhone®, iPod®, iPod nano®, iPod touch®, iPad® and Siri® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

Android

Android™ and GooglePlay™ are trademarks of Google Inc.

Owner Assistance

Holden Customer Care

At Holden, we want you to be completely satisfied with your ownership experience. This applies to your vehicle and any Holden representative you may deal with.

Refer below for two options for seeking assistance with your query.

Holden Dealerships

Holden encourages you to seek assistance from your Holden Dealership. Each Holden Dealership is equipped to manage any sales, servicing, parts or technical query.

In the instance that you wish to escalate a query to a higher level of staff, further options are available to you.

As a first step, Holden suggests you discuss any concern with the relevant Department Manager (Sales Manager or Service Manager).

Alternatively, the Dealership General Manager or Dealer Principal will also be happy to assist you.

Holden Customer Care Office

Should you wish to speak to a Holden representative, you are welcome to contact the Holden Customer Care team.

Refer below for operating hours and various methods of communication.

Operating Hours

Weekdays: 8am – 7pm AEST

Saturday: 9am – 1pm AEST

Telephone

Holden Customer Care can be telephoned from anywhere within Australia for only the cost of a local call.

The contact number is:

1800 033 349

Email

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercare@gm.com

Written Correspondence

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

The Manager
Holden Customer Care Centre
GPO Box 1714
Melbourne 3001

Your written correspondence should clearly outline your concern or query and include:

- Your name and address
- Telephone numbers, both private and business
- Servicing dealer's name and address
- Vehicle model

- Vehicle identification number (I.S.O. VIN), refer to the inside front cover of the Service/ Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glove box
- Date of purchase
- Current odometer reading

Most of this information will be found on the Vehicle Identification Certificate, located inside the front cover of the Service & Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glove box.

Before you write however, remember that the telephone is the quicker and more efficient means of communication.

New Zealand

The information in this Owner's Handbook applies primarily to Australian Holden vehicles and there may be some differences to the Warranty and Owner Assistance provisions for New Zealand.

Applicable details for New Zealand are set out in the Holden Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet enclosed in the New Zealand glovebox wallet.

New Zealand Assistance can be reached on:

0800 HOLDEN (0800 465 336)

This number provides access to New Zealand Roadside Assistance as well as New Zealand Customer Care.

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercare@gm.com

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

The Manager
Holden Customer Care Centre
PO Box 11195
Ellerslie
Auckland 1542

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Event Data Recorders

Event Data Recorders

The vehicle has a number of sophisticated systems that monitor and control several vehicle data. Some data may be stored during regular operation to facilitate repair of detected malfunctions, other data is stored only in a crash or near crash event by systems commonly called event data recorders (EDR).

The systems may record data about the condition of the vehicle and how it was operated (e.g. engine speed, brake application, seat belt usage). To read this data, special equipment and access to the vehicle are required. This will take place when the vehicle is serviced by a Holden dealer. Some data is electronically fed into global diagnostic systems.

The manufacturer will not access information about a crash event or share it with others except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee.
- In response to an official request of police or similar government office.
- As part of the manufacturer's defence in case of legal proceedings.
- As required by law.

In addition, the manufacturer may use the collected or received data:

- For the manufacturer's research needs.
- To make it available for research needs where appropriate confidentiality is maintained and need is shown.
- To share summary data which is not tied to a specific vehicle with other organisations for research purposes.

Index

A

Accessories and Modifications 282
Accessory Power 208
Adaptive Cruise Control 249
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) 134
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light 115
AdBlue 214
AdBlue Warning Light 114
Add-On Electrical Equipment ... 280
Adjustable Air Vents 202
Adjustments
  Seat, Initial Drive 51
Advanced Parking Assist 240
Agreements
  Trademarks and License 188
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 293
Air Conditioning 196
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 203
Air Intake 203
Airbag System
  Check 72
  What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 72
Airbags
  Curtain 71
  Front 69
  Seat Belt Tensioner Light 110
  Side 70
  System Check 68
Alert
  Lane Change 266
  Side Blind Zone (SBZA) 265
All-Wheel Drive 222
AM-FM-DAB Radio 150
Anchor Fittings
  Top Tether 77
Antenna
  Multi-band 154
Antilock Brake System (ABS) ... 223
  Warning Light 112
Appearance Care
  Exterior 335
  Interior 338
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 181
Armrest
  Front Seat 58
  Rear Seat 64
Armrest Storage 82
Audio
  Bluetooth 158

Automatic
Dimming Mirrors 42
Engine Start/Stop Feature 209
Headlamp System 134
Transmission 217
Automatic Transmission
Electronic Driving Programs 220
Fault 221
Interruption of Power Supply 221
Manual Mode 219
Shift Lever 217
Transmission Display 217
Auxiliary Jack 158
Avoiding Untrusted Media Devices 154

B

Battery 298
Jump Starting 331
Power Protection 142
Voltage and Charging Messages 128
Blade Replacement, Wiper 300
Bleeding
Diesel Fuel System 299
Bluetooth
Overview 176
Bluetooth Audio 158
Bonnet 284
Boot
Cover 83
Brake
Parking, Electric 224
System Warning Light 111
Brakes 223, 297
Antilock 223
Assist 225
Fluid 297
Break-In, New Vehicle 206
Bulb Replacement
Fog Lamps 302
Halogen Headlamps 301
Headlamps 300
Side Turn Signal Lights 310
Taillamps 305
Buying New Tyres 320
Buzzers, Warning 128

C

Camera
Rear Vision (RVC) 231
Capacities and Specifications 349
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust 212
Tailgate 32
Cargo
Cover 84
Tie-Downs 85
Catalytic Converter 212
Caution, Danger, and Warning 3
Centre Console Lighting 141
Centre Console Storage 82
Chains, Tyre 321
Charging
Wireless 99
Charging System Light 111
Check
Engine Light (Malfunction Indicator) 111
Child Restraint Installation Locations 77
Child Restraints
Infants and Young Children 73
Installation Locations 77
ISOFIX 77
Older Children 73
Systems 74
Cleaning
Exterior Care 335
Interior Care 338

Climate Control Systems
Electronic 196
Clock 97
Cluster, Instrument 100
Compartments
Storage 80
Compressor Kit, Tyre
Sealant 321
Control System
Emission 283
Controls
Steering Wheel 145
Convenience Net 86
Convex Mirrors 41
Coolant
Engine 294
Engine Temperature Gauge .. 108
Engine Temperature
Warning Light 114
Cooling 196
Cover
Cargo 84
Rear Floor Storage 83
Coverage Explanations 169
Covers 139
Boot 83
Misted Lamps 139
Cruise Control 245
Cruise Control (cont'd)
Adaptive 249
Light 115
Cupholders 80
Curtain Airbag System 71
Customer-installed
Equipment, Notices 72

D

Danger, Warning, and Caution 3
Data Recorders, Event 353
Database Coverage
Explanations 169
Daytime Running
Lamps (DRL) 133
Destination 163
Diesel Exhaust Fluid
AdBlue 214
Diesel Fuel System Bleeding ... 299
Diesel Particulate Filter 212
Dimensions
Vehicle 348
Displays
Automatic Transmission 217
Service 108
Door
Ajar Light 115
Locks 27
Drive Systems
All-Wheel Drive 222
Driver Assistance Systems 230
Driver Information
Centre (DIC) 116
Driving
Electronic Programs 220
Environment 205

E

Electric Parking Brake 224
Electric Parking Brake Light 112
Electrical Equipment,
Add-On 280
Electrical System
Engine Compartment Fuse
Block 312
Fuses 311
Instrument Panel Fuse
Block 314
Rear Fuse Panel 316
Electronic Climate Control
System 196
Electronic Driving Programs 220
Electronic Stability Control 227
Electronic Stability Control
(ESC) Off Light 113

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator Warning Light 113
Emission Control System 283
Emission Information 282
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 293
Automatic Start/Stop Feature 209
Check Light (Malfunction Indicator) 111
Compartment Overview 286
Coolant 294
Coolant Temperature Gauge 108
Coolant Temperature Warning Light 114
Exhaust 212
Oil Pressure Light 114
Overheating 296
Starting 207
Engine Data 345
Engine Identification 343
Entry Lighting 141
Event Data Recorders 353
Exhaust Fluid
Diesel, AdBlue 214
Exit Lighting 142
Exterior Lamp Controls 132

F

Fault, Automatic Transmission 221
Features
Memory 12
Filter 212
Filter,
Engine Air Cleaner 293
Fixed Air Vents 202
Flashers, Hazard Warning 138
Flat Tyre
Changing 325
Floor Mats 338
Fluid
Brakes 297
Washer 297
Fog Lamps
Bulb Replacement 302
Front 138
Rear 139
Fog Light, Rear 115
Folding Mirrors 41
Following Distance Indication System 258
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 256
Front Airbag System 69
Front Fog Lamp
Light 115
Front Pedestrian Protection System 263
Front Seat Armrest 58
Front Seat Position Seats
Adjustment 51
Front Seats
Adjustment 52
Heated 59
Ventilated 59
Front Storage 81
Fuel 270
Filling the Tank 274
Gauge 107
Low Fuel Warning Light 114
Recommended 272
Fuses 311
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 312
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 314
Rear Fuse Panel 316

G
Gauges
Engine Coolant Temperature 108
Fuel 107
Odometer 106
Service Display 108
Speedometer 105
Tachometer 107
Trip Odometer 106
Turn Signal 110
Gear Shifting Light 112
General Information
Vehicle Care 282
Global Positioning System (GPS) 167
Glove Box 80
Guidance
Problems with the Route 168

H
Hazard Warning Flashers 138
Head Restraints 49
Head-up Display 124
Headlamp Leveling Control 137
Headlamps
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) 134
Headlamps (cont'd)
Automatic 134
Bulb Replacement 300
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 133
Halogen 301
High-Beam On Light 115
High/Low Beam Changer 133
Lamps On Reminder 115
Heated
Rear Seats 64
Rear Window 46
Heated Front Seats 59
Heated Mirrors 42
Heating 196
High-Beam On Light 115
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 225
Horn 16, 94
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 65
HVAC 196

I
Identification Labels 344
If the System Needs Service 169
Immobiliser 40
Light 114
Indicator
Pedestrian Ahead 113
Vehicle Ahead 113
Infants and Young Children, Restraints 73
Information
Service 340
Information on Loading the Vehicle 90
Instrument Cluster 100
Instrument Panel Overview 6
Interactive
Drive Control System 228
Interactive Drive Control System 228
Interior Lamps 140
Interruption of Power Supply 221
Introduction 2
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 77

J
Jack
Auxiliary 158
Jump Starting 331

K

Keyless Entry
Remote (RKE) System 22
Keys 21

L

Lamps
Daytime Running (DRL) 133
Exterior Controls 132
Front Fog 138
Interior 140
Malfunction Indicator (Check Engine) 111
Misted Covers 139
On Reminder 115
Reading 141
Rear Fog 139
Reversing 139
Side Turn Signal 310
Sun Visor 141
Taillamps 305
Lane Change Alert (LCA) 266
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 268
Lane Keep Assist Light 112
Leveling Control
Headlamp 137
Lighting
Adaptive Forward 134
Centre Console 141
Entry 141
Exit 142
Illumination Control 139
Lights
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light 115
AdBlue Warning 114
Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner 110
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 112
Brake System Warning 111
Charging System 111
Check Engine (Malfunction Indicator) 111
Cruise Control 115
Door Ajar 115
Electric Parking Brake 112
Electronic Stability Control (ESC), Off 113
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator Warning 113
Lights (cont'd)
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning 114
Engine Oil Pressure 114
Fog Lamp, Rear 115
Front Fog Lamp 115
Gear Shifting 112
High-Beam On 115
High/Low Beam Changer 133
Immobiliser 114
Lane Keep Assist 112
Low Fuel Warning 114
Pre-Heat 114
Seat Belt Reminders 110
Service Electric Parking Brake 112
Traction Control System (TCS) 113
Loading the Vehicle 90
Locks
Door 27
Safety 31
Low Fuel Warning Light 114

M
Maintenance
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 203
Maintenance Schedule
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 341
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 111
Manual Mode 219
Map Data Updates 169
Maps 161
Massage 60
Media
Avoiding Untrusted Devices .. 154
Memory Features 12
Memory Seats 57
Messages
Battery Voltage and Charging 128
Vehicle 127
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming 42
Automatic Dimming Rearview 43
Convex 41
Folding 41
Mirrors (cont'd)
Heated 42
Manual Rearview 43
Power 41
Tilt in Reverse 42
Misted Light Covers 139
Multi-band Antenna 154

N
Navigation
Destination 163
Using the System 160
Navigation Symbols 162
Net
Cargo 86
New Vehicle Break-In 206
Notices for Customer-installed Equipment 72

O
Odometer 106
Trip 106
Oil
Engine 291
Pressure Light 114
Older Children, Restraints 73
Outlets
Power 97
Outside Temperature 97
Overheating, Engine 296
Overrun Cut-Off 209
Overview 143
Owner Assistance 352

P
Parking 211
Parking Assist 237
Advanced 240
Pedestrian Ahead Indicator 113
Pedestrian Protection System ... 78
Personalisation
Vehicle 129
Phone
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 181
Bluetooth 176
Port
USB 154
Positioning
Vehicle 168
Power
Button 206
Mirrors 41
Outlets 97
Protection, Battery 142
Retained Accessory (RAP) ... 208

Power (cont'd)
Windows 44
Pre-Heat Light 114
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts 67
Pressure
Tyre 349
Problems with Route
Guidance 168

R

Radio Data System (RDS) 152
Radio Reception 153
Radios
AM-FM-DAB Radio 150
Reading Lamps 141
Rear Floor Storage Cover 83
Rear Fog Light 115
Rear Fog Lights 139
Rear Seat Armrest 64
Rear Seats 61
Heated 64
Rear Storage 82
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 231
Rear Window Washer/Wiper 96
Rear Windows
Heated 46
Rearview Mirrors 43
Automatic Dimming 43
Recognition
Voice 170
Recommended
Fuel 272
Recommended Fluids and
Lubricants 341
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE)
System 22
Remote Vehicle Start 26
Replacement Parts
Airbags 72
Replacing Airbag System 72
Replacing Seat Belt System
Parts after a Crash 68
Restraints
Where to Put 76
Retained Accessory
Power (RAP) 208
Reverse Lamps 139
Reverse Tilt Mirrors 42
Ride Control Systems 227
Electronic Stability (ESC) 227
Roof
Sunroof 46
Roof Rack System 89
Rotation, Tyres 319

S

Safety Locks 31
Sealant Kit, Tyre 321
Seat Belts
Care 67
Child Restraints 77
How to Wear Seat Belts
Properly 65
Reminders 110
Replacing after a Crash 68
Three-Point 66
Use During Pregnancy 67
Seats
Adjustment, Front 52
Head Restraints 49
Heated Front 59
Heated, Rear 64
Memory 57
Position, Front 51
Rear 61
Seats and Restraints
Pedestrian Protection
System 78
Service 203
Accessories and
Modifications 282

Service and Maintenance
Service Information 340
Service Display 108
Service Electric Parking
Brake Light 112
Service Information 340
Servicing System 169
Settings 182
Shift Lever 217
Side Airbag System 70
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) ... 265
Side Turn Signal Lights 310
Signals, Turn and
Lane-Change 138
Software Updates 150
Specifications and
Capacities 349
Speed Limiter 247
Speedometer 105
Start Assist, Hill 225
Start Vehicle, Remote 26
Starting and Operating
Overrun Cut-Off 209
Starting the Engine 207
Steering
Wheel Adjustment 93
Wheel Controls 93
Steering Wheel Controls 145
Storage
Boot Cover 83
Rear 82
Vehicle 282
Storage Areas
Armrest 82
Cargo Cover 84
Centre Console 82
Front 81
Glove Box 80
Information on Loading the
Vehicle 90
Rear Floor Storage Cover 83
Roof Rack System 89
Sunglasses 81
Storage Compartments 80
Sun Visor Lamps 141
Sun Visors 46
Sunglass Storage 81
Sunroof 46
Surround Vision System 234
Symbols 3
Navigation 162
System
Following Distance
Indication 258
System (cont'd)
Forward Collision
Alert (FCA) 256
Front Pedestrian Protection ... 263
Global Positioning 167
Interactive Drive Control 228
Roof Rack 89
Surround Vision 234
Systems
Driver Assistance 230

T

Tachometer 107
Tailgate 32
Taillamps 305
Technical Data
Tyre Pressure 349
Temperature
Outside 97
Theft-Deterrent Systems
Immobiliser 40
Thermometer
Outside Temperature 97
Three-Point Seat Belt 66
Time 97
Tools 317
Top Tether Anchor Fittings 77

Towing
Another Vehicle 334
Trailer 276
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) ... 279
Vehicle 333
Traction
Control System (TCS) 226
Traction Control System
(TCS) Off Light 113
Trademarks and
License Agreements 188, 351
Trailer
Sway Control (TSC) 279
Towing 276
Transmission
Automatic 217
Transmission Display 217
Tread Depth 319
Trip Odometer 106
Turn and Lane-Change
Signals 138
Turn Signal 110
Tyre Pressure 349
Tyres 318
Buying New Tyres 320
Chains 321
Tyres (cont'd)
Changing 325
Pressure 318
Rotation 319
Sealant and
Compressor Kit 321
Wheel Alignment and Tyre
Balance 320

U

Updates
Map Data 169
Software 150
USB Port 154
Using the Navigation System ...160
Using the System 147
Using This Manual 3

V

Vehicle
Identification Number (VIN) ... 342
Messages 127
Personalisation 129
Remote Start 26
Towing 333
Towing Another Vehicle 334
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 113
Vehicle Care
Tyre Pressure 318
Vehicle Dimensions 348
Vehicle Identification
Labels 344
Vehicle Positioning 168
Vehicle Storage 282
Vehicle Weight 345
Ventilated Front Seats 59
Ventilation
Adjustable Air 202
Fixed Air Vents 202
Visors 46
Voice Recognition 170

W

Warning
Brake System Light 111
Caution and Danger 3
Warning Chimes 128
Warning Light
AdBlue 114
Warnings
Hazard Flashers 138
Washer Fluid 297
Weights
Vehicle 345

Wheels
Alignment and Tyre Balance 320
Where to Put the Restraint 76
Windows 43
Heated, Rear 46
Power 44
Windshield
Wiper/Washer 94
Wiper Blade Replacement 300
Wipers
Rear Washer 96
Wireless Charging 99